



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Doc. T 918.69.448



3 2044 097 054 894

Box, No.

## ESSEX INSTITUTE.

PRESENTED BY

*Dr. S. A. Green.*

The Library Committee shall divide the books and other articles belonging to the Library into three classes, namely: (a) those which are not to be removed from the building; (b) those which may be taken from the halls only by written permission of three members of the committee, who shall take a receipt for the same and be responsible for their safe return; (c) those which may circulate under the following rules:—

Members shall be entitled to take from the Library one folio, or two quarto volumes, or four volumes of any lesser fold, with the plates belonging to the same, upon having them recorded by the Librarian, or Assistant Librarian, and promising to make good any damage they sustain, while in their possession, and to replace the same if lost, or pay the sum fixed by the Library Committee.

No person shall lend any book belonging to the Institute, excepting to a member, under a penalty of one dollar for every such offence.

The Library Committee may allow members to take more than the allotted number of books upon a written application, and may also permit other persons than members to use the Library, under such conditions as they may impose.

No person shall detain any book longer than four weeks from the time of its being taken from the Library, if notified that the same is wanted by another member, under a penalty of five cents per day, and no volume shall be detained longer than three months at one time under the same penalty.

The Librarian shall have power by order of the Library Committee to call in any volume after it has been retained by a member for ten days.

On or before the first Wednesday in May, all books shall be returned to the Library, and a penalty of five cents per day shall be imposed for each volume detained.

Labels designating the class to which each book belongs shall be placed upon its cover.

No book shall be allowed to circulate until one month after its reception.

RD COLLEGE LIBRARY

THE GIFT OF

SE ARTHUR PLIMPTON

### Standard Classical Works.

**Cleopatra de Officiis.** With English Notes, mostly translated from Zump and Boumell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 104 pages.

**Horace, The Works of.** With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.

**Livy.** Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the Use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.

**Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great.** Edited and Illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

**Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.** With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGES. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

**The Histories of Tacitus.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 458 pages.

**Tacitus' Germania and Agricola.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.

**Virgil's Æneid.\*** With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 508 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

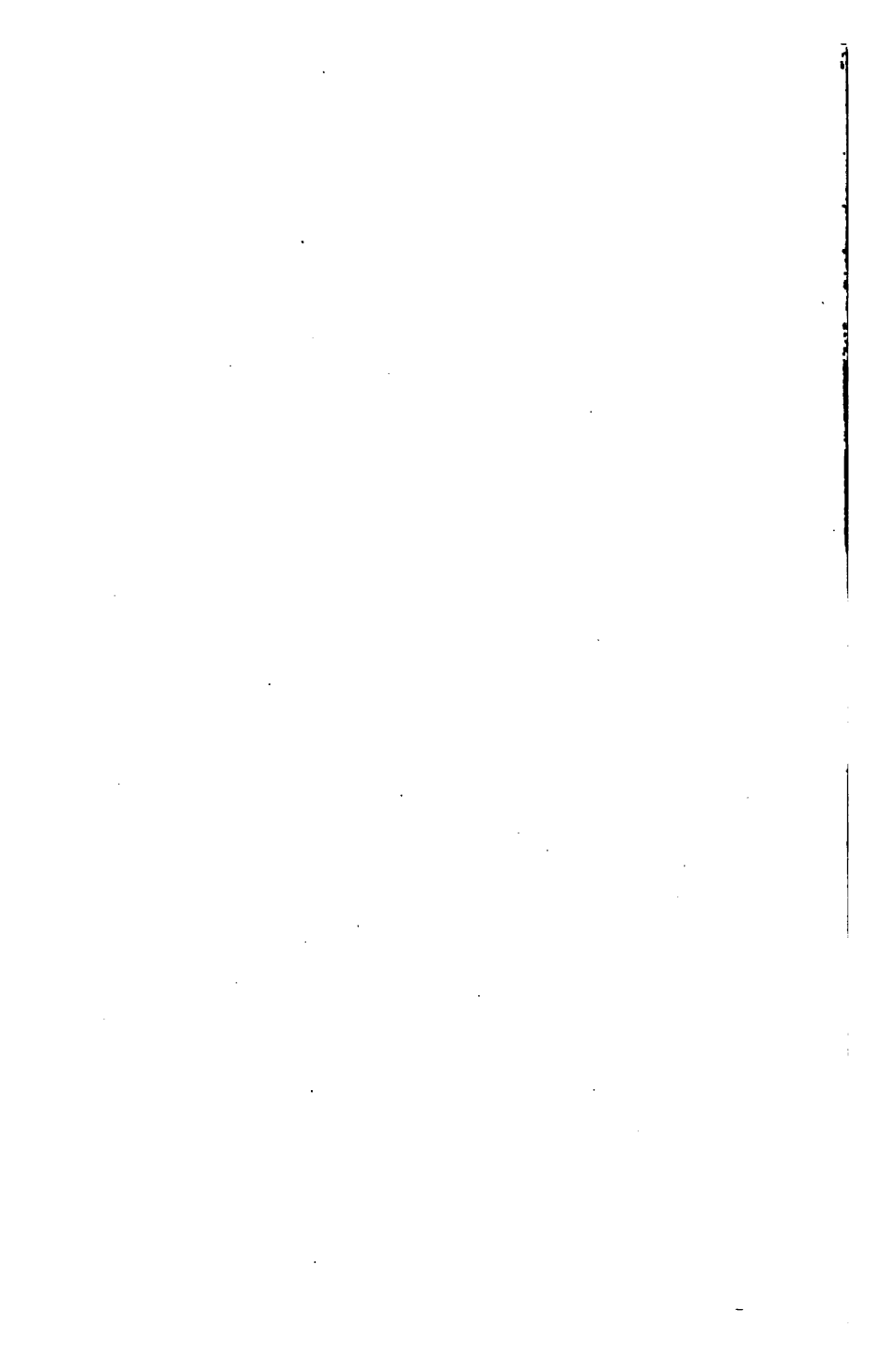
### Greek Text-Books.

**A First Greek Book\* and Introductory Reader.** By A. HARKNESS, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book," "Second Latin Book," &c. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

**Acts of the Apostles,** according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN, with Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D. With Map. 12mo.

**Arnold's First Greek Book,\*** on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.

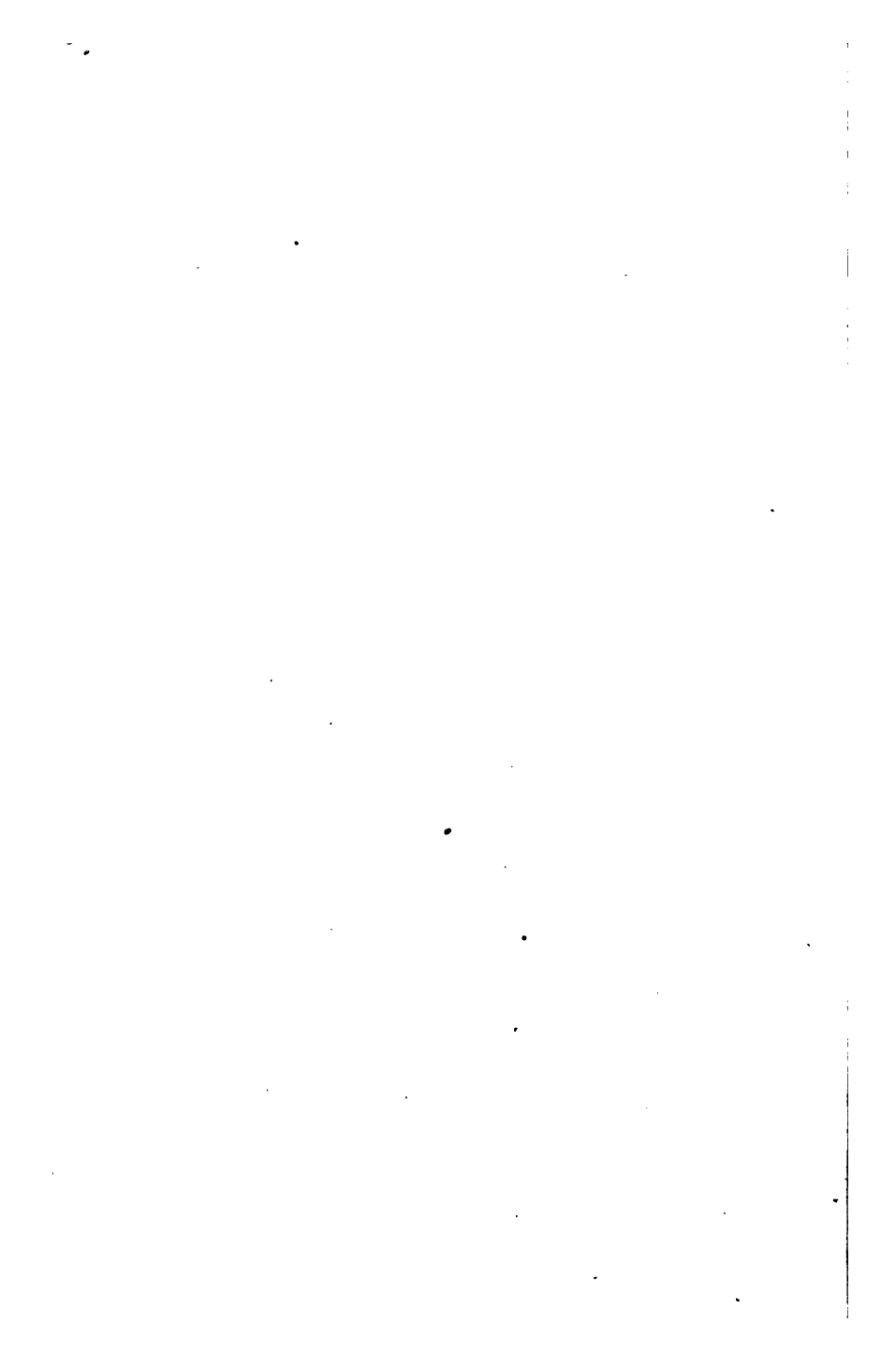


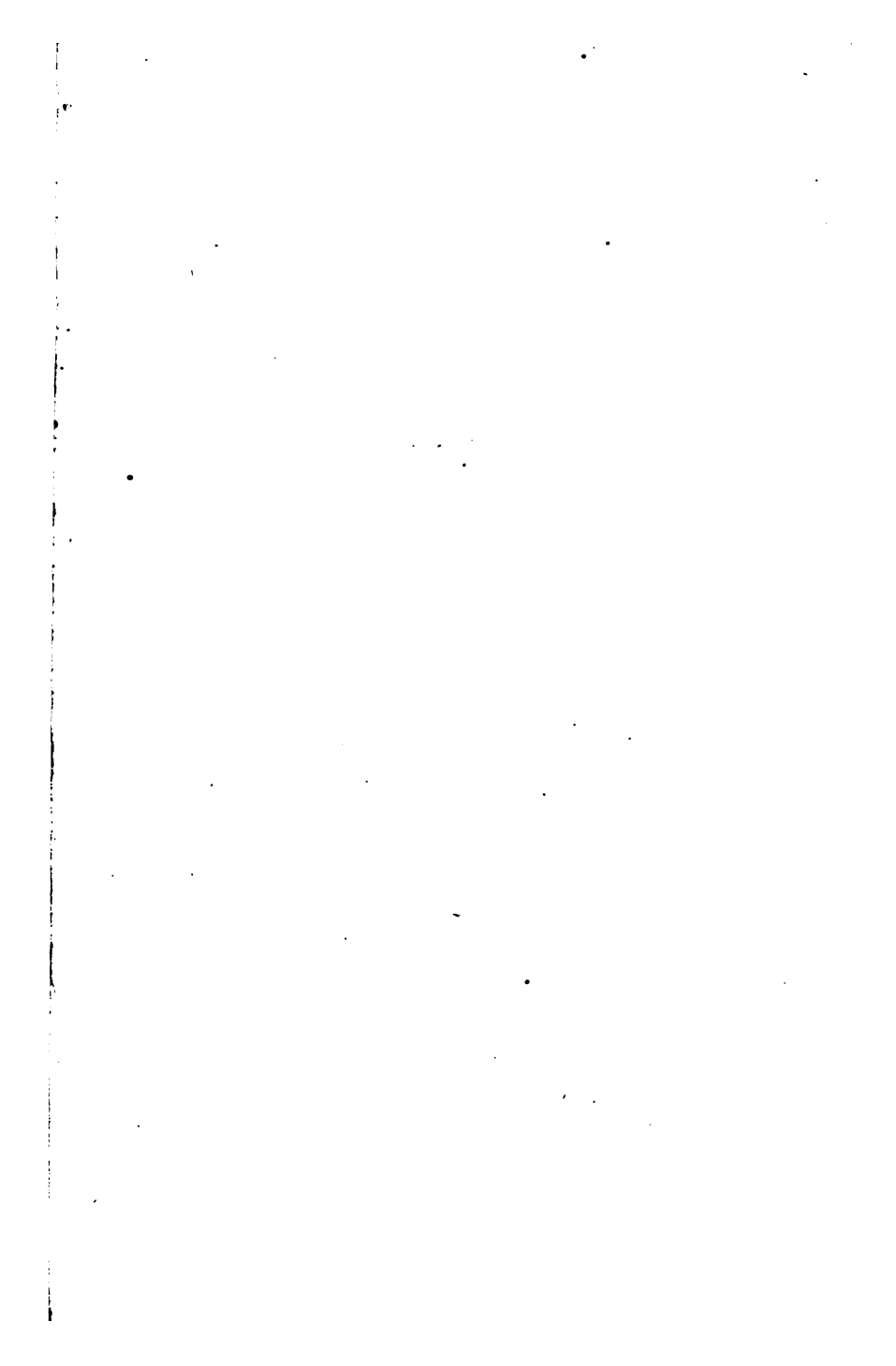
Floral.

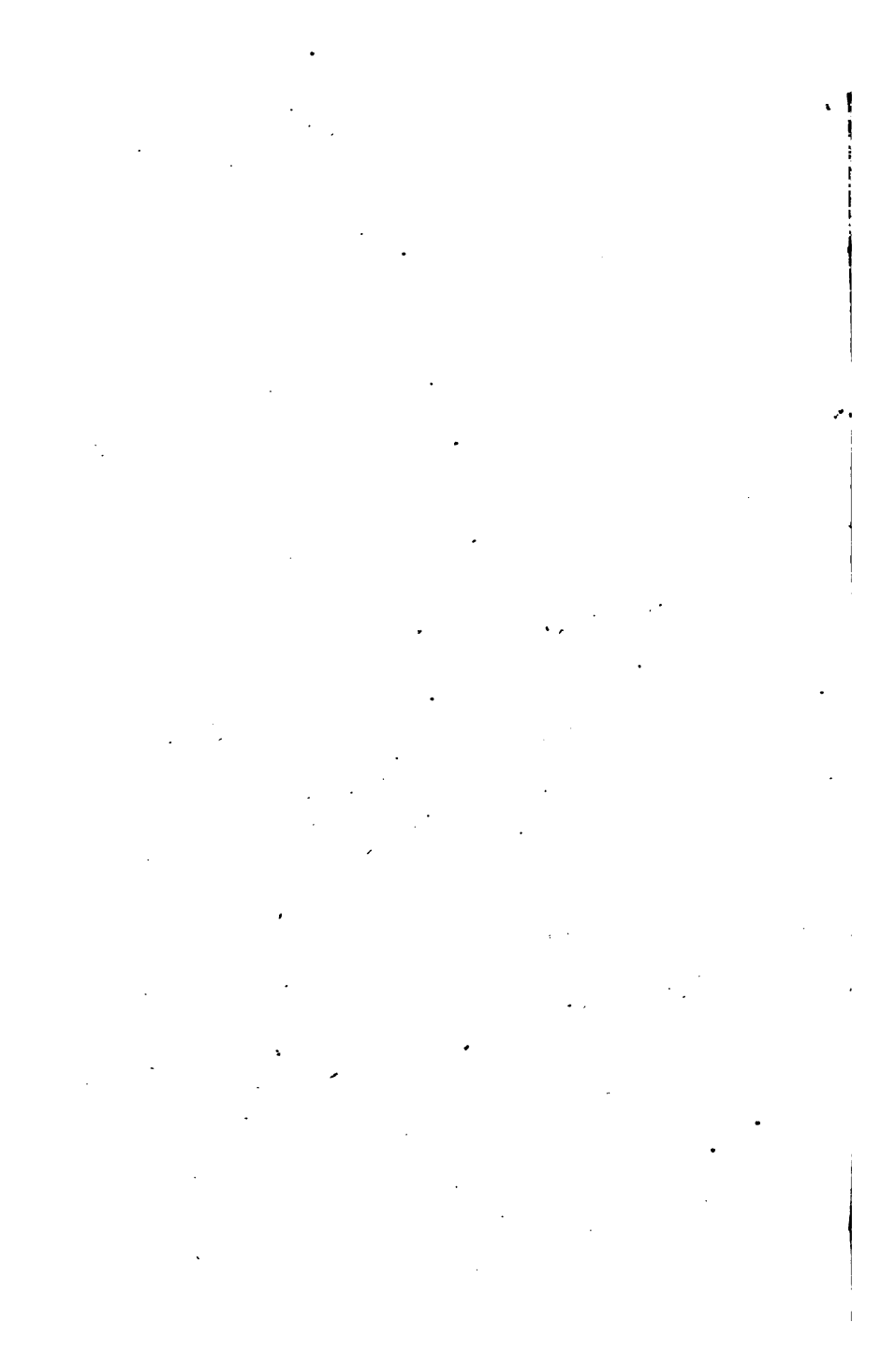
Floral.

Floral.

Floral.









AN  
INTRODUCTORY  
LATIN BOOK,

INTENDED AS AN  
ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,  
ON THE  
INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,

AND AS AN  
INTRODUCTION  
TO THE  
AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

BY  
ALBERT HARKNESS,  
*Professor in Brown University.*  
AUTHOR OF "A LATIN GRAMMAR," "A LATIN READER," "A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.

NEW YORK:  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,  
90, 92 & 94 GRAND STREET.  
1869.

Educ 7 918, 67. 4-1 x

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
JANUARY 25, 1924

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1886, by  
ALBERT HARKNESS,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Rhode Island.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin. As an Elementary Drill-book, it aims to supply a want long felt in our schools. In no stage of a course of classical study is judicious instruction of more vital importance than in that which deals with the forms and elements of the Latin language. To the beginner, every thing is new, and requires minute and careful illustration. He must at the very outset become so familiar with all the grammatical inflections, with their exact form and force, that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur. He must not lose time in uncertain conjecture, where positive knowledge alone will be of any real value. Improvement on this point is one of the pressing needs of our schools. This volume is intended as a contribution to classical education in aid of this particular work. It aims to lighten the burden of the teacher in elementary drill, and to aid him in grounding his pupils in the first elements of the Latin language.

It is the unmistakable verdict of the class-room, that theory and practice must not be separated in the study of language. The true method of instruction will make ample provision for both. On the one hand, the pupil must, by a vigorous use of the memory, become master of all the grammatical forms and rules; while, on the other hand, he must not be denied the luxury of using the knowledge which he is so laboriously acquiring.

To this just and urgent demand of the class-room, the

author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since, on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, owed its origin. For the favor with which it was received, and for the generous interest with which it has so long been regarded, the author desires here to express his sincere thanks to the numerous classical instructors whose fidelity in its use has contributed so largely to its success. In the conviction, however, that it has now done its appointed work, he begs leave to offer them the present volume as its successor.

The great objection to most First Latin Books, that, however excellent they may be in themselves, they are not especially adapted to any particular Grammar, and that they accordingly fill the memory of the pupil with rules and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume. All the grammatical portions of it, even to the numbering of the articles, are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Indeed, the paradigms are not only the same as in the Grammar, but also occupy the same place on the page; so that even the local associations which the beginner so readily forms with the pages of his first book may be transferred directly to the Grammar.

This work is intended to be complete in itself. It comprises a distinct outline of Latin Grammar, Exercises for Double Translation, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes and Vocabularies. As an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader and Latin Composition, it discusses and illustrates precisely those points which are deemed most essential as a preparation for the course of study presented in those works.

# CONTENTS.

## PART FIRST.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

|                             | Page. |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| Alphabet . . . . .          | 1     |
| Sounds of Letters . . . . . | 2     |
| Exercise I. . . . .         | 3     |
| "    II. . . . .            | 4     |
| "    III. . . . .           | 5     |
| Syllables . . . . .         | 6     |
| Quantity . . . . .          | 6     |
| Accentuation . . . . .      | 7     |
| Exercise IV. . . . .        | 7     |

## PART SECOND.

### ETYMOLOGY.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### NOUNS.

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Gender . . . . .            | 8  |
| Person and Number . . . . . | 9  |
| Cases . . . . .             | 9  |
| Declensions . . . . .       | 10 |
| First Declension . . . . .  | 11 |
| Exercise V. . . . .         | 11 |
| Second Declension . . . . . | 13 |
| Exercise VI. . . . .        | 14 |
| "    VII. . . . .           | 16 |
| Third Declension . . . . .  | 17 |
| Exercise VIII. . . . .      | 23 |
| "    IX. . . . .            | 25 |
| Fourth Declension . . . . . | 26 |
| Exercise X. . . . .         | 27 |

|                            | Page. |
|----------------------------|-------|
| Fifth Declension . . . . . | 28    |
| Exercise XI. . . . .       | 29    |

## CHAPTER II.

## ADJECTIVES.

|  |    |
|--|----|
| First and Second Declensions . . . . . | 30 |
| Exercise XII. . . . .                  | 33 |
| Third Declension . . . . .             | 35 |
| Exercise XIII. . . . .                 | 37 |
| Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .     | 38 |
| Exercise XIV. . . . .                  | 39 |
| Numeral Adjectives . . . . .           | 40 |
| Exercise XV. . . . .                   | 42 |

## CHAPTER III.

## PRONOUNS.

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Personal Pronouns . . . . . | 43 |
| Possessive . . . . .        | 44 |
| Demonstrative . . . . .     | 44 |
| Relative . . . . .          | 45 |
| Interrogative . . . . .     | 46 |
| Indefinite . . . . .        | 46 |
| Exercise XVI. . . . .       | 47 |

## CHAPTER IV.

## VERBS.

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Voices . . . . .            | 48 |
| Moods . . . . .             | 49 |
| Tenses . . . . .            | 50 |
| Numbers . . . . .           | 50 |
| Persons . . . . .           | 51 |
| Conjugation . . . . .       | 51 |
| The Verb Sum . . . . .      | 52 |
| Exercise XVII. . . . .      | 56 |
| “ XVIII. . . . .            | 57 |
| “ XIX. . . . .              | 60 |
| First Conjugation . . . . . | 62 |
| Exercise XX. . . . .        | 66 |

# CONTENTS.

vii

|                              | Page. |
|------------------------------|-------|
| Exercise XXI. . . . .        | 67    |
| “ XXII. . . . .              | 69    |
| “ XXIII. . . . .             | 71    |
| “ XXIV. . . . .              | 73    |
| “ XXV. . . . .               | 74    |
| “ XXVI. . . . .              | 75    |
| “ XXVII. . . . .             | 76    |
| Second Conjugation . . . . . | 78    |
| Exercise XXVIII. . . . .     | 82    |
| “ XXIX. . . . .              | 83    |
| “ XXX. . . . .               | 84    |
| “ XXXI. . . . .              | 85    |
| “ XXXII. . . . .             | 86    |
| “ XXXIII. . . . .            | 87    |
| “ XXXIV. . . . .             | 88    |
| Third Conjugation . . . . .  | 90    |
| Exercise XXXV. . . . .       | 94    |
| “ XXXVI. . . . .             | 95    |
| “ XXXVII. . . . .            | 96    |
| “ XXXVIII. . . . .           | 97    |
| “ XXXIX. . . . .             | 97    |
| “ XL. . . . .                | 98    |
| “ XLI. . . . .               | 99    |
| Fourth Conjugation . . . . . | 100   |
| Exercise XLII. . . . .       | 104   |
| “ XLIII. . . . .             | 104   |
| “ XLIV. . . . .              | 105   |
| “ XLV. . . . .               | 106   |
| “ XLVI. . . . .              | 107   |
| “ XLVII. . . . .             | 107   |
| “ XLVIII. . . . .            | 108   |
| Verbs in 10 . . . . .        | 110   |
| Exercise XLIX. . . . .       | 112   |

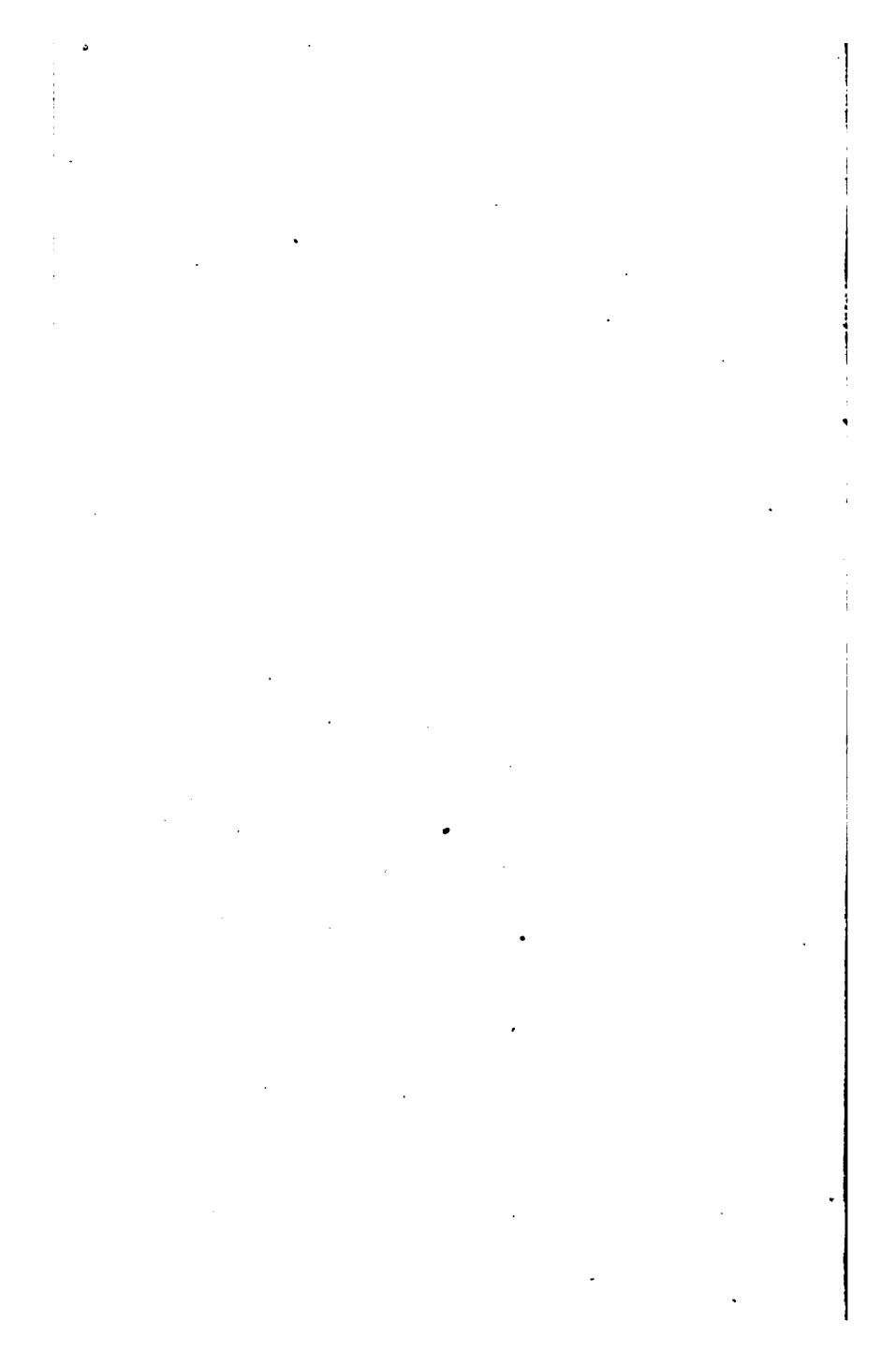
## PART THIRD.

### SYNTAX.

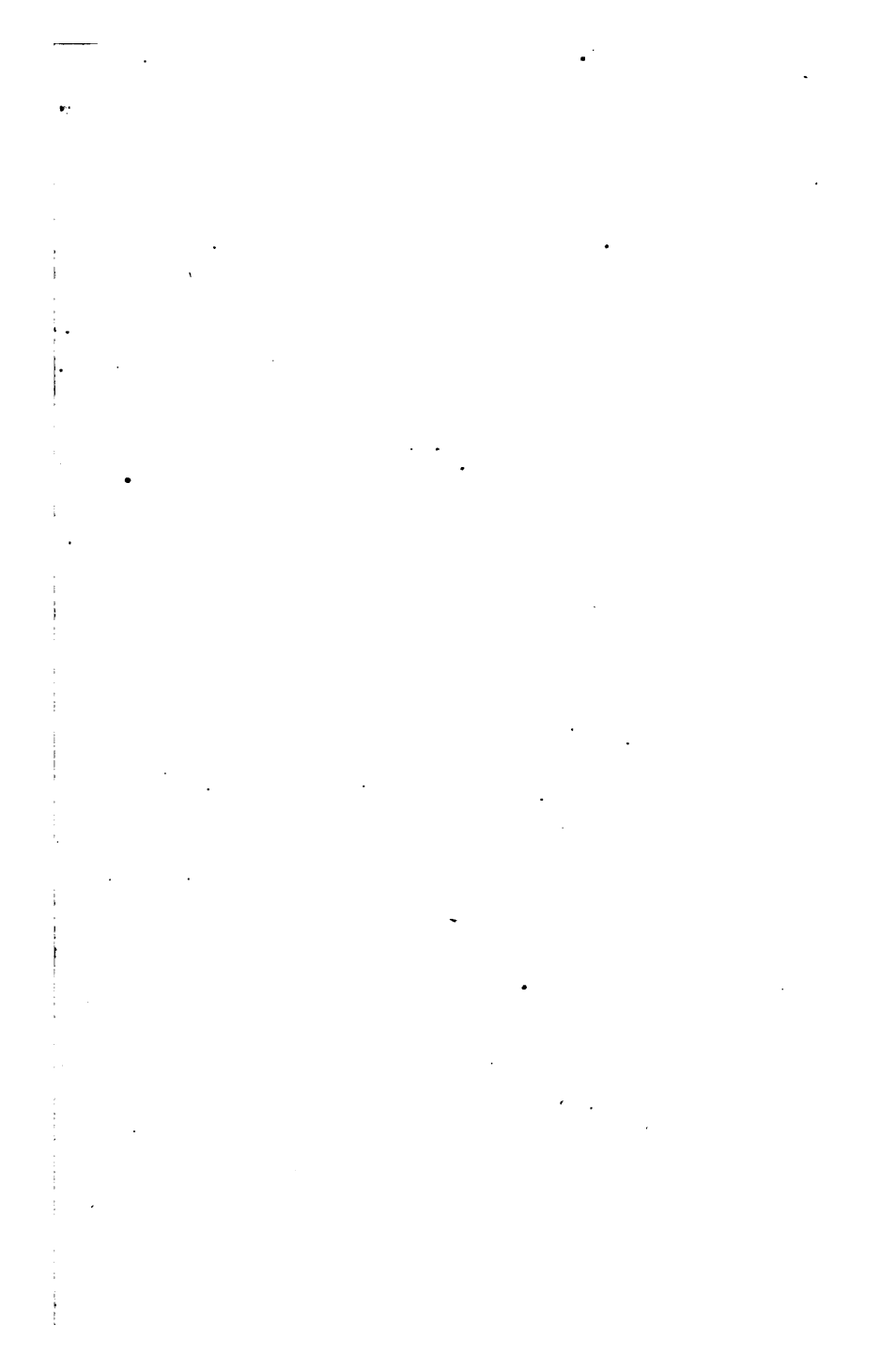
#### CHAPTER I

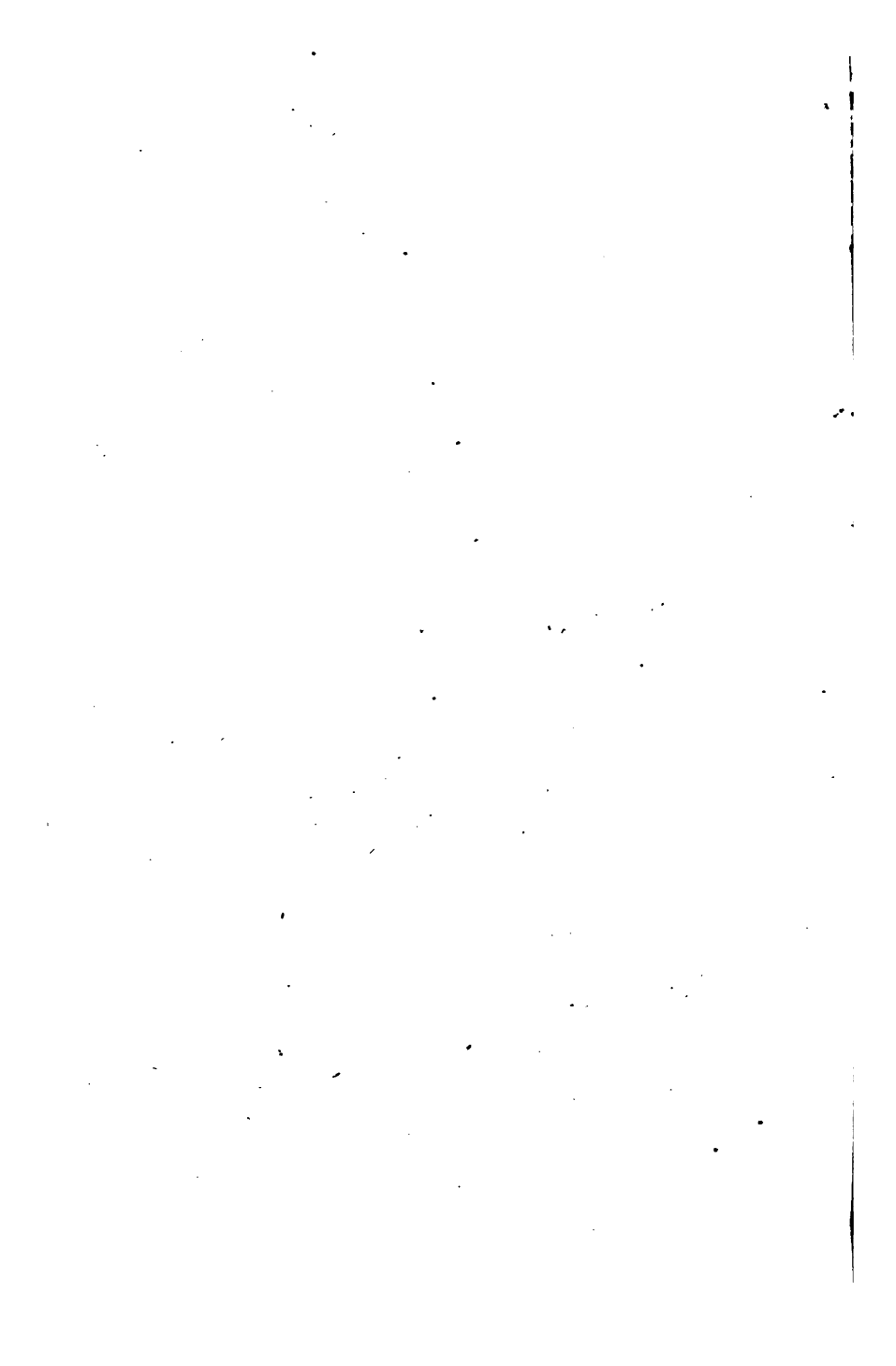
##### SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Section.                                 |     |
| I. Classification of Sentences . . . . . | 114 |
| II. Simple Sentences . . . . .           | 115 |









AN  
INTRODUCTORY  
LATIN BOOK,

INTENDED AS AN  
ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,  
ON THE  
INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,

AND AS AN  
INTRODUCTION  
TO THE  
AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

BY  
ALBERT HARKNESS,  
*Professor in Brown University.*  
AUTHOR OF "A LATIN GRAMMAR," "A LATIN READER," "A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.

NEW YORK:  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,  
90, 92 & 94 GRAND STREET.  
1869.

## SOUNDS OF LETTERS.

5. Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, two distinct systems are recognized, generally known as the *English* and the *Continental Method*.<sup>1</sup> For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

## I. ENGLISH METHOD.

1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

6. Vowels generally have their *long* or *short* English sounds.

7. **Long Sound.**—Vowels have their long English sounds—*a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel:<sup>2</sup> *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.<sup>3</sup>

3. In penultimate<sup>4</sup> and unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*, *do-lo'-ris*. But

1) *A unaccented* has the sound of a *final* in America: *men'-sa*.

8. **Short Sound.**—Vowels have the short English sound—*a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth*—in the following situations:

<sup>1</sup> Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

<sup>2</sup> Some give to *i* in both syllables of *tibi* and *sibi* the short sound.

<sup>3</sup> In these rules, no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel: for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

<sup>4</sup> Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *á-mat, á-met, rex'-it, sol, con'-sul, Té'-thys*; except *post, es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res, dí'-es, hos, á'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3): *rex'-it, bel'-lum, rex'-e'-runt, bello'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables before one or more consonants, except the penultimate: *dom'-i-nus, pat'-ri-bus*. But

1) *A, e, or o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e, i, or y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *á'-ci-es, á'-cri-a, me'-re-o, do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus, sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

## 2. Sounds of Diphthongs.

9. *Ae* and *oe* are pronounced like *e*:

1) long: *Cae'-sar* (Ce'-sar), *Oe'-ta* (E'-ta).

2) short: *Daed'-ä-lus* (Ded'-a-lus), *Oed'-i-pus*.

*Au* as in author: *au'-rum*.

*Eu* . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.<sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISE I.

*Give the sounds of the Vowels and Diphthongs in the following words.*

1. Men'-sam,<sup>2</sup> men'-sas, men'-sis, men'-sae,<sup>3</sup> men'-sa'-rum.<sup>4</sup>
2. Ho'-ram,<sup>5</sup> ho'-ras, ho'-ris, ho'-rae,<sup>6</sup> ho'-ra'-rum.<sup>7</sup> 3. Scho'-la,<sup>8</sup> scho'-lam, scho'-las, scho'-lia, scho'-lae, scho'-la'-rum.
4. Co-ro'-na,<sup>8</sup> co-ro'-nam, co-ro'-nas, co-ro'-nis, co-ro'-nae.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs; but, when so used, they have the long sound of *i*: *hei, cui*.

<sup>2</sup> 8, 2; 8, 1.      <sup>3</sup> 7, 3; 8, 1.      <sup>4</sup> 7, 3; 7, 3, 1).

<sup>5</sup> 8, 2; 9; 7, 1.      <sup>6</sup> 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.      <sup>7</sup> 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

<sup>8</sup> 8, 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.      <sup>9</sup> 7, 3; 8, 1.

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English; but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C, G, S, T, and X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. *C* and *g* are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e, i, y, ae,* and *oe*; and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (sedo), *cī'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-na*, *a'-ge* (a-je), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (ka'do), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*.

2. *S* generally has its regular English sound as in *son*, thus: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *si'-dus*. But

1) *S* final after *e, ae, au, b, m, n, r,* is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *lāus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

3. *T* has its regular English sound as in *time*: *tī'-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound like *ks*: *rex'-i* (rek'-si), *ux'-or* (uk'-sor).

12. **C, S, T, and X — Aspirated.** — Before *i*, preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c, s, t,* and *x* are aspirated, — *c, s,* and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us), *Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um); *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo*, preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-e-on).

13. **Silent Consonants.** — An initial consonant, with or without the aspirate *h*, is sometimes silent: *Cne'-us* (Ne'-us).

## EXERCISE II.

*Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words.*

1. *Ci'-vis*,<sup>1</sup> *civ'-i-um*, *civ'-i-bus*. 2. *Car'-men*,<sup>2</sup> *car'-mi-nis*, *car'-mi-ne*.<sup>3</sup> 3. *Rex*,<sup>4</sup> *re'-gis*,<sup>5</sup> *re'-gi*, *re'-gum*.<sup>5</sup> 4. *Ca'-put*,<sup>6</sup> *cap'-i-tis*, *cap'-i-tum*. 5. *A'-ci-em*,<sup>7</sup> *a'-ci-e*, *a'-ci-es*.<sup>8</sup> 6. *Ars*,<sup>8</sup> *ar'-tis*, *ar'-tes*,<sup>8</sup> *ar'-ti-um*.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 11, 1 and 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>2</sup> 11, 1; 8, 2; 8, 1.

<sup>3</sup> 8, 3; 7, 3; 7, 1.

<sup>4</sup> 11, 4.

<sup>5</sup> 11, 1; 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>6</sup> 11, 1, and 3.

<sup>7</sup> 8, 3, 1); 12; 8, 1.

<sup>8</sup> 11, 2, 1).

<sup>9</sup> 12.

## II. CONTINENTAL METHOD.<sup>1</sup>

### 1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

14. Each vowel has in the main one uniform sound;<sup>2</sup> but the length or duration of the sound depends upon the quantity of the vowel. See 20.

The vowel-sounds are as follows:

|   |      |   |       |         |       |          |
|---|------|---|-------|---------|-------|----------|
| a | like | ä | in    | father: | e.g., | a'-ra.   |
| e | "    | ā | made: | "       |       | plé-bes. |
| i | "    | ē | me:   | "       |       | i'-ri.   |
| o | "    | ō | no:   | "       |       | o'-ro.   |
| u | "    | ô | do:   | "       |       | u'-num.  |
| y | "    | ē | me;   | "       |       | Ny'-sa.  |

### 2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

15. *Ae* and *oe* like *a* in *made*: e.g., *ae'-tas*, *coe'-lum*.

*au* " *ou* " *out*: " *au'-rum*.<sup>3</sup>

### 3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

16. The pronunciation of the consonants is similar to that of the English method; but it varies somewhat in different countries.

## EXERCISE III.

*Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words, according to the Continental Method.*

1. Hō'-rā, hō'-rām, hō'-rās, hō'-rīs, hō'-rae, hō-rā'-rūm.
2. Glō'-rī-ā, glō'-rī-ām, glō'-rī-ae. 3. Dō'-nūm, dō'-nī, dō'-

<sup>1</sup> If the *English Method* is adopted as the standard in the school, this outline of the *Continental Method* should be omitted.

<sup>2</sup> These sounds sometimes undergo slight modifications in uniting with the various consonants.

<sup>3</sup> In other combinations, the two vowels are generally pronounced separately; but *ei* and *eu* occur as diphthongs, with nearly the same sound as in English.

nā, dō'-nā, dō-nō'-rūm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vīs, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm, cī'-vēs, cīv'-ī-ūm, cīv'-ī-būs.

### SYLLABLES.

17. In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade* are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel-sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus: *mo'-re*, *vi'-ce*, *a-cu'-te*, *per-sud'-de*.

### QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are, in quantity or length, either long, short, or common.<sup>1</sup>

21. **Long.**—A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. **Short.**—A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dī'-es*, *vi'-ae*, *nī'-hil*.<sup>2</sup>

23. **Common.**—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally<sup>3</sup> short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-gri*.

24. The signs  $\bar{\phantom{a}}$ ,  $\acute{\phantom{a}}$ ,  $\circ\phantom{a}$ , denote respectively that the syllables over which they are placed are long, short, or common: *ā-grō-rūm*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Common; i.e., sometimes long, and sometimes short.

<sup>2</sup> No account is taken of the breathing *h*. See 7, 2, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> A vowel is said to be *naturally* short when it is short in its own nature; i.e., in itself, without reference to its position.

<sup>4</sup> By referring to 14, it will be seen, that, in the Continental Method, quantity and sound coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 7 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (26). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus, in *rēx*, *ūrbs*, *ārs*, *sōl*, the vowels are all long in quantity;



## ACCENTUATION.

### I. PRIMARY ACCENT.

25. Monosyllables are treated as accented syllables: *mons, nos*.

26. Other words are accented as follows:<sup>1</sup>

1. *Words of two syllables* — always on the first: *men'-sa*.
2. *Words of more than two syllables* — on the *penult*<sup>2</sup> if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the *antepenult*:<sup>3</sup> *ho-nō'-ris, con'-sū-lis*.

### II. SECONDARY ACCENTS.

27. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent, — on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity; otherwise on the third: *mon'-u-e'-runt, mon'-u-e-ra'-mus, in-stau'-ra-ve'-runt*.

28. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hon'-o-rif'-i-cen-tis'-st-mus*.

### EXERCISE IV.

*Accent and pronounce the following Words.*

1. Cōrōnā,<sup>3</sup> cōrōnae, cōrōnārūm.<sup>4</sup>
2. Gemmae,<sup>5</sup> gemmām, gemmārūm.
3. Sāpientiae,<sup>6</sup> āmicītiaē, justītiaē, glōriaē.<sup>7</sup>

but by 8, 1, they all have the short English sounds: while in *āvē, mūrē*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 7, 1, and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity (according to 26), and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity (according to 7-12).

<sup>1</sup> In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

<sup>2</sup> Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

<sup>3</sup> 26, 2; 7, 3, 1).

<sup>4</sup> 11, 1; 26, 1.

<sup>5</sup> 11, 1; 8, 3, 1).

<sup>6</sup> 26, 2; 27.

<sup>7</sup> 27; 8, 3, 1); 12.

4. Sāpientiām, āmīcītiām, justītiām, glōriām. 5. Sāpientiā, āmīcītiā, justītiā, glōriā.

## PART SECOND.

### ETYMOLOGY.

29. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

30. The Parts of Speech<sup>1</sup> are — *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

## CHAPTER I.

### NOUNS.

31. A Noun, or Substantive, is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicēro*, Cicero; *Rōma*, Rome; *puer*, boy; *dōmus*, house.

1. A **Proper Noun** is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicēro*, *Rōma*.

2. A **Common Noun** is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, man; *ēquus*, horse.

32. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

### GENDER.

33. There are three genders,<sup>2</sup> — *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

<sup>1</sup> Thus in Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

<sup>2</sup> In English, *Gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction

34. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

### 35. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

#### I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vir*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Nōtus*, south wind; *Aprilis*, April.

#### II. FEMININE.

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Rōma*, Rome; *Dēlos*, Delos; *pirus*, pear-tree.

### PERSON AND NUMBER.

37. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

### CASES.

38. The Latin has six cases:<sup>1</sup>

| Names.      | English Equivalents.   |
|-------------|--|
| Nominative, | Nominative.  |
| Genitive,   | Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .                          |
| Dative,     | Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .                           |
| Accusative, | Objective.   |
| Vocative,   | Nominative Independent.  |
| Ablative,   | Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> . |

of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

<sup>1</sup> The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* (*John's*) shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

1. **Oblique Cases.**—In distinction from the Nominative and Vocative (*casus recti*, right cases), the other cases are called *oblique* (*casus obliqui*).

2. **Case-Endings.**—In form, the several cases are, in general, distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *case-endings*: *Nom. mensa*, *Gen. mensae*, &c.

3. **Cases alike.**—But certain cases are not distinguished in form. Thus,

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative*, in *neuters*, are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike in all nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension (45).

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike. ††

## DECLENSIONS.

39. The formation of the several cases is called *Declension*.

40. **Five Declensions.**—In Latin, there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the following

### *Genitive Endings.*

| Dec. I.     | Dec. II.   | Dec. III.   | Dec. IV.    | Dec. V.                |
|-------------|------------|-------------|-------------|------------------------|
| <i>ae</i> , | <i>i</i> , | <i>is</i> , | <i>ūs</i> , | <i>ei</i> <sup>1</sup> |

41. **Stem and Endings.**—In any noun, of whatever declension,

1. The stem<sup>2</sup> may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. The several cases may be formed by adding to this stem the case-endings.

<sup>1</sup> See 119, 1.

<sup>2</sup> The *stem* is the basis of the word, or the part to which the several endings are added to form the various cases. Thus in the forms, *mensā*, *mensae*, *mensūm*, *mensis*, &c., given under 42, it will be observed that *mens* remains unchanged; and that, by the addition of the endings, *a*, *ae*, *am*, *is*, &c., to it, the several cases are formed. Here *mens* is the *stem*; and *a*, *ae*, *am*, *is*, &c., are the *case-endings*.

FIRST DECLENSION.

42. Nouns of the first declension end in

ă and ă, — *feminine*; ăs and ăs, — *masculine*.<sup>1</sup>

But pure Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are declined as follows:

| SINGULAR.      |                          |      |
|----------------|--------------------------|------|
| Nom. mensă,    | a table,                 | ă    |
| Gen. mensae,   | of a table,              | ae   |
| Dat. mensae,   | to, for, a table,        | ae   |
| Acc. mensam,   | a table,                 | am   |
| Voc. mensă,    | O table,                 | ă    |
| Abl. mensa,    | with, from, by, a table, | ă    |
| PLURAL.        |                          |      |
| Nom. mensae,   | tables,                  | ae   |
| Gen. mensarum, | of tables,               | arum |
| Dat. mensis,   | to, for, tables,         | is   |
| Acc. mensas,   | tables,                  | as   |
| Voc. mensae,   | O tables,                | ae   |
| Abl. mensis,   | with, from, by, tables,  | is.  |

1. **Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of this example, it will be seen that the several cases are distinguished from each other by the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.** — With these endings decline:

*Ala*, wing; *ăqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortuna*, fortune; *porta*, gate; *victoria*, victory.

EXERCISE V.

I. Vocabulary.

|           |                                  |             |
|-----------|----------------------------------|-------------|
| Amicitia, | ae, <sup>2</sup> f. <sup>3</sup> | friendship. |
| Corona,   | ae, f.                           | crown.      |

<sup>1</sup> That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

<sup>2</sup> The ending *ae* is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia*; Gen., *amicitiae*.

<sup>3</sup> Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

|            |        |          |
|------------|--------|----------|
| Gemmā      | ac, f. | gem      |
| Glōriā,    | ac, f. | glory.   |
| Hōrā,      | ac, f. | hour.    |
| Iustitiā,  | ac, f. | justice. |
| Sapientiā, | ac, f. | wisdom.  |
| Schōlā,    | ae, f. | school.  |

## II. Translate into English.

1. Corōnā,<sup>1</sup> corōnā, corōnac,<sup>2</sup> corōnam, coronārum, corōnis, corōnas. 2. Gemmā, gemmā, gemmac, gemmam, gemmārum, gemmis, gemmas. 3. Sapientiā, amicitia, iustitiā, gloriā. 4. Sapientiam, amicitiam, iustitiam, gloriam. 5. Sapientiā, amicitia, iustitiā, gloriā. 6. Scholārum, horārum. 7. Scholis, horis. 8. Scholas, horas.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of<sup>3</sup> friendship, of friendships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a<sup>4</sup> crown, of a gem. 11. Crowns, gems. 12. With the<sup>4</sup> crowns, with the gems. 13. Of crowns, of gems.

<sup>1</sup> As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna*, crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*; as, *corōna*, a crown; (3) with the definite article *the*; as, *corōna*, the crown.

<sup>2</sup> When the same Latin form may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus *corōnac* may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of*, *to*, *by*, may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word. Thus *friendship*, *amicitia*; *of friendship*, *amicitiae*.

<sup>4</sup> The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a*, *an*, and *the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all. *Crown*, *a crown*, and *the crown*, are all rendered into Latin by the same word.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

45. Nouns of the second declension end in

**ēr, īr, ūs, os**, — *masculine*; **ūm, on**, — *neuter*.

But pure Latin nouns end only in *er, ir, us, um*, and are declined as follows:

*Servus, slave. Puer, boy. Ager, field. Templum, temple.*

## SINGULAR.

|                  |               |              |                |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>N. servūs</i> | <i>puēr</i>   | <i>āgēr</i>  | <i>templūm</i> |
| <i>G. servī</i>  | <i>puērī</i>  | <i>āgrī</i>  | <i>templī</i>  |
| <i>D. servō</i>  | <i>puērō</i>  | <i>āgrō</i>  | <i>templō</i>  |
| <i>A. servūm</i> | <i>puērūm</i> | <i>āgrūm</i> | <i>templūm</i> |
| <i>V. servē</i>  | <i>puēr</i>   | <i>āgēr</i>  | <i>templūm</i> |
| <i>A. servō</i>  | <i>puērō</i>  | <i>āgrō</i>  | <i>templō</i>  |

## PLURAL.

|                    |                 |                |                  |
|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| <i>N. servī</i>    | <i>puērī</i>    | <i>āgrī</i>    | <i>templā</i>    |
| <i>G. servōrūm</i> | <i>puērōrūm</i> | <i>āgrōrūm</i> | <i>templōrūm</i> |
| <i>D. servīs</i>   | <i>puērīs</i>   | <i>āgrīs</i>   | <i>templīs</i>   |
| <i>A. servōs</i>   | <i>puērōs</i>   | <i>āgrōs</i>   | <i>templā</i>    |
| <i>V. servī</i>    | <i>puērī</i>    | <i>āgrī</i>    | <i>templā</i>    |
| <i>A. servīs.</i>  | <i>puērīs.</i>  | <i>āgrīs.</i>  | <i>templīs.</i>  |

1. **Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen that they are declined with the following

*Case-endings.*

| 1. ūs.       | 2. ēr.         | 3. ūm.    |
|--------------|----------------|-----------|
| SINGULAR.    |                |           |
| <i>N. ūs</i> | — <sup>1</sup> | <i>ūm</i> |
| <i>G. ī</i>  | <i>ī</i>       | <i>ī</i>  |
| <i>D. ō</i>  | <i>ō</i>       | <i>ō</i>  |
| <i>A. ūm</i> | <i>ūm</i>      | <i>ūm</i> |
| <i>V. ē</i>  | — <sup>1</sup> | <i>ūm</i> |
| <i>A. ō</i>  | <i>ō</i>       | <i>ō</i>  |

<sup>1</sup> The endings for the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*: thus *puer* is the stem without any case-ending; the full form would be *puērūs*.

|         | PLURAL. |      |
|---------|---------|------|
| N. i    | i       | 3    |
| G. ōrūm | ōrūm    | ōrūm |
| D. is   | is      | is   |
| A. ōs   | ōs      | 3    |
| V. i    | i       | 3    |
| A. is.  | is.     | is.  |

2. Examples for Practice. — Like *SERVUS*: *annus*, year; *dominus*, master. — Like *PUER*: *gēner*, son-in-law; *sōcer*, father-in-law. — Like *AGER*: *fūber*, artisan; *magister*, master. — Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war; *regnum*, kingdom.

3. Paradigms. — Observe

1) That *puer* differs in declension from *servus* only in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc.: Nom. *puer* for *puērus*, Voc. *puer* for *puēre*.

2) That *ager* differs from *puer* only in dropping *e* before *r*.

3) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 38, 3.

## EXERCISE VI.

### I. Vocabulary.

|                   |                |
|-------------------|----------------|
| Dōnūm, i, n.      | gift.          |
| Gēnēr, gēnērī, m. | son-in-law.    |
| Lībēr, libērī, m. | book.          |
| Ocūlūs, i, m.     | eye.           |
| Praeceptūm, i, n. | rule, precept. |
| Sōcēr, sōcērī, m. | father-in-law. |
| Tyrannūs, i, m.   | tyrant.        |
| Verbūm, i, n.     | word.          |

### II. Translate into English.

1. Ocūlus, ocūli, ocūlo, ocūlum, ocūle, oculōrum, ocūlis, ocūlos. 2. Socer, socērī, socēro, socērūm, socerōrum, socēris, socēros. 3. Servi, tyranni. 4. Puērī, gēnērī. 5. Agri, libri. 6. Templi, doni. 7. Servo, tyranno. 8. Puērūm, gēnērūm. 9. Agrōrum, librōrum. 10. Tempła, dona. 11. Servum, servos. 12. Gēnērī, generōrum. 13. Agri, agrō-



rum. 14. *Dono, donis.* 15. *Verbum, praeceptum.* 16. *Verbi, praecepti.*

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The slave, the slaves. 2. For the slave, for the slaves.  
3. Of the slave, of the slaves. 4. Of the father-in-law,  
of the son-in-law. 5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-  
law. 6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law. 7. The  
boy, the field. 8. The boys, the fields. 9. The gift, the  
gifts. 10. With the gift, with the gifts. 11. The tyrant,  
the boy, the book, the precept. 12. Of the tyrant, of the  
boy, of the book, of the precept.

## SECOND DECLENSION—CONTINUED.

### RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:<sup>1</sup>

*Cluilius rex mōritur, Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. *Urbes Carthāgo atque Nūmantia, the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic.

### I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline<sup>2</sup> it.
3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, &c.
4. Give its Syntax,<sup>3</sup> and the Rule for it.

<sup>1</sup> A noun or pronoun used to explain or identify another noun or pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*; as, *Cluilius rex*, Cluilius the king. Here *rex*, the king, is the appositive, showing the rank or office of Cluilius,—*Cluilius the king*. The noun or pronoun to which the appositive is added—*Cluilius* in the example—is called the *subject* of the appositive.

<sup>2</sup> Adjectives in the Comparative or in the Superlative degree (160) should also be compared (162).

<sup>3</sup> By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the Grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the Syntax of *regina*, under the Model, by stating that it is in apposition with its subject, *Artemisia*.

## MODEL.

Artēmisīā rēginā, *Artemisia the queen.*

*Regina* is a noun (31) of the First Declension (42), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *regin* (41). Singular: *regina, reginae, reginae, reginam, reginā, reginā*. Plural: *reginae, reginārum, reginis, reginas, reginae, reginis*. It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 35, II. 1. It is in the Nominative Singular, in apposition with its subject *Artemisia*, with which it agrees in case, according to Rule II: "An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE."

## EXERCISE VII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| Caiūs, ii, m.      | <i>Caius</i> , a proper name.          |
| Filiā, ae, f.      | <i>daughter</i> .                      |
| Hastā, ae, f.      | <i>spear</i> .                         |
| Pisistrātūs, i, m. | <i>Pisistratus</i> , Tyrant of Athens. |
| Rāmūs, i, m.       | <i>branch</i> .                        |
| Rēginā, ae, f.     | <i>queen</i> .                         |
| Tulliā, ae, f.     | <i>Tullia</i> , a proper name.         |
| Victōria, ae, f.   | <i>Victoria</i> , Queen of England.    |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rāmūs, hastā.
2. Rami, hastae.
3. Ramo, hastae.
4. Ramum, hastam.
5. Ramo, hastā.
6. Ramōrum, hastārum.
7. Ramis, hastis.
8. Ramos, hastas.
9. Tyranni, tyrannōrum.
10. Verbum, verba.
11. Verbo, verbis.
12. Templum, templa.
13. Templi, templōrum.
14. Pisistrātus tyrannus.<sup>1</sup>
15. Pisistrāti tyranni.
16. Pisistrāto tyranno.
17. Tulliā filiā.
18. Tulliae filiae.
19. Tulliam filiam.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The tyrant, the crown.
2. The tyrants, the crowns.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Tyrannus* is an appositive, in the Nominative, in agreement with its subject, *Pisistrātus*, according to Rule II. 363.

3. Of the tyrant, of the crown. 4. Of the tyrants, of the crowns. 5. To the tyrant, to the crown. 6. To the tyrants, to the crowns. 7. The book, the books. 8. With the book, with the books. 9. Of Pisistratus, for Pisistratus. 10. Of the queen, for the queen. 11. Caius the slave.<sup>1</sup> 12. Of Caius the slave. 13. For Caius the slave. 14. Victoria the queen. 15. For Victoria the queen. 16. Of Victoria the queen.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

48. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

#### I. MASCULINE ENDINGS:<sup>2</sup>

o, or, os, er, es *increasing in the genitive.*

#### II. FEMININE ENDINGS:

as, is, ys, x, es *not increasing in the genitive; s preceded by a consonant.*

#### III. NEUTER ENDINGS:

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.

49. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns which have a case-ending in the Nominative Singular. These all end in *e, s, or x.*

II. Nouns which have no case-ending in the Nominative Singular.

In Class II., the Nom. Sing. is either the same as the stem, or is formed from it by dropping or changing one or more letters of the stem: *consul*, Gen. *consulis*; stem, *consul*, a *consul*: *leo*, *leonis*; stem, *leon* (Nom. drops *n*), lion: *carmen*, *carminis*; stem, *carmin* (Nom. changes *in* to *en*), song.

<sup>1</sup> See Rule II. 363.

<sup>2</sup> That is, nouns with these endings are masculine.

<sup>+</sup>50. CLASS I.—WITH NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s** *impure*,<sup>1</sup> and **x**:—*with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

|                                   |                                 |                                 |                                |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Nubes, <i>f.</i><br><i>cloud.</i> | Avis, <i>f.</i><br><i>bird.</i> | Urbs, <i>f.</i><br><i>city.</i> | Rex, <i>m.</i><br><i>king.</i> |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|

## SINGULAR.

|          |      |       |                  |
|----------|------|-------|------------------|
| N. nubēs | avis | urbis | rex <sup>2</sup> |
| G. nubis | avis | urbis | regis            |
| D. nubī  | avī  | urbī  | regī             |
| A. nubēm | avēm | urbēm | regēm            |
| V. nubēs | avis | urbis | rex              |
| A. nubē  | avē  | urbē  | regē             |

## PLURAL.

|             |         |          |          |
|-------------|---------|----------|----------|
| N. nubēs    | avēs    | urbēs    | regēs    |
| G. nubium   | avium   | urbium   | regium   |
| D. nubibus  | avibus  | urbibus  | regibus  |
| A. nubēs    | avēs    | urbēs    | regēs    |
| V. nubēs    | avēs    | urbēs    | regēs    |
| A. nubibus. | avibus. | urbibus. | regibus. |

II. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s** *impure*, and **x**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

|                                     |                                   |                               |  |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| Miles, <i>m.</i><br><i>soldier.</i> | Lapis, <i>m.</i><br><i>stone.</i> | Ars, <i>f.</i><br><i>art.</i> | Judex, <i>m. and f.</i><br><i>judge.</i> |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|

## SINGULAR.

|            |         |       |                    |
|------------|---------|-------|--------------------|
| N. milēs   | lāpis   | ars   | jūdex <sup>2</sup> |
| G. militis | lapidis | artis | judicis            |
| D. militī  | lapidī  | artī  | judicī             |
| A. militēm | lapidēm | artēm | judicēm            |
| V. milēs   | lāpis   | ars   | judex              |
| A. militē  | lapidē  | artē  | judicē             |

## PLURAL.

|            |         |        |          |
|------------|---------|--------|----------|
| N. militēs | lapidēs | artēs  | judicēs  |
| G. militūm | lapidūm | artiūm | judiciūm |

<sup>1</sup> *Impure*; i.e., preceded by a consonant.

<sup>2</sup> X in rex = *gs*; *g* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending: but in judex, x = *cs*; *c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending.

|                       |                    |                  |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| D. milit <b>ibūs</b>  | lapid <b>ibūs</b>  | art <b>ibūs</b>  | judic <b>ibūs</b>  |
| A. milit <b>ēs</b>    | lapid <b>ēs</b>    | art <b>ēs</b>    | judic <b>ēs</b>    |
| V. milit <b>ēs</b>    | lapid <b>ēs</b>    | art <b>ēs</b>    | judic <b>ēs</b>    |
| A. milit <b>ibūs.</b> | lapid <b>ibūs.</b> | art <b>ibūs.</b> | judic <b>ibūs.</b> |

III. Nouns in **as, os, us**, and **e**:—*those in as, os, and us with stem changed, those in e with stem unchanged.*

|                    |                  |                   |                 |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| Civitas, <i>f.</i> | Nepos, <i>m.</i> | Virtus, <i>f.</i> | Mare, <i>n.</i> |
| <i>state.</i>      | <i>grandson.</i> | <i>virtue.</i>    | <i>sea.</i>     |

## SINGULAR.

|                      |                 |                  |                           |
|----------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| N. civit <b>ās</b>   | nep <b>ōs</b>   | virt <b>ūs</b>   | mār <b>ē</b>              |
| G. civitat <b>is</b> | nepōt <b>is</b> | virtut <b>is</b> | mar <b>is</b>             |
| D. civitat <b>i</b>  | nepōt <b>i</b>  | virtut <b>i</b>  | mar <b>i</b>              |
| A. civitat <b>ēm</b> | nepōt <b>ēm</b> | virtut <b>ēm</b> | mar <b>ē</b>              |
| V. civit <b>ās</b>   | nep <b>ōs</b>   | virt <b>ūs</b>   | mar <b>ē</b>              |
| A. civitat <b>ē</b>  | nepōt <b>ē</b>  | virtut <b>ē</b>  | mar <b>i</b> <sup>2</sup> |

## PLURAL.

|                                    |                    |                     |                  |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| N. civitat <b>ēs</b>               | nepōt <b>ēs</b>    | virtut <b>ēs</b>    | mar <b>iā</b>    |
| G. civitat <b>ium</b> <sup>1</sup> | nepōt <b>ium</b>   | virtut <b>ium</b>   | mar <b>ium</b>   |
| D. civitat <b>ibūs</b>             | nepot <b>ibūs</b>  | virtut <b>ibūs</b>  | mar <b>ibūs</b>  |
| A. civitat <b>ēs</b>               | nepōt <b>ēs</b>    | virtut <b>ēs</b>    | mar <b>iā</b>    |
| V. civitat <b>ēs</b>               | nepōt <b>ēs</b>    | virtut <b>ēs</b>    | mar <b>iā</b>    |
| A. civitat <b>ibūs.</b>            | nepot <b>ibūs.</b> | virtut <b>ibūs.</b> | mar <b>ibūs.</b> |

## 51. CLASS II. — WITHOUT NOMINATIVE ENDING. /

I. Nouns in **l** and **r**:—*with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

|                |                   |                   |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Sol, <i>m.</i> | Consul, <i>m.</i> | Passer, <i>m.</i> | Vultur, <i>m.</i> |
| <i>sun.</i>    | <i>consul.</i>    | <i>sparrow.</i>   | <i>vulture.</i>   |

## SINGULAR.

|                  |                  |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| N. s <b>ol</b>   | cons <b>ul</b>   | pass <b>ēr</b>   | vult <b>ūr</b>   |
| G. s <b>olīs</b> | consul <b>īs</b> | passer <b>īs</b> | vultur <b>īs</b> |
| D. s <b>olī</b>  | consul <b>ī</b>  | passer <b>ī</b>  | vultūr <b>i</b>  |
| A. s <b>olēm</b> | consul <b>ēm</b> | passer <b>ēm</b> | vultūr <b>ēm</b> |
| V. s <b>ol</b>   | cons <b>ul</b>   | pass <b>ēr</b>   | vult <b>ūr</b>   |
| A. s <b>olē</b>  | consul <b>ē</b>  | passer <b>ē</b>  | vultūr <b>ē</b>  |

## PLURAL.

|                    |                    |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| N. s <b>olēs</b>   | consul <b>ēs</b>   | passer <b>ēs</b>   | vultur <b>ēs</b>   |
| G. s <b>olium</b>  | consul <b>ium</b>  | passer <b>ium</b>  | vultur <b>ium</b>  |
| D. s <b>olibūs</b> | consul <b>ibūs</b> | passer <b>ibūs</b> | vultur <b>ibūs</b> |

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes *civitatium*.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes *mare* in poetry.

|             |             |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| A. sölēs    | consülēs    | passērēs    | vultūrēs    |
| V. sölēs    | consülēs    | passērēs    | vultūrēs    |
| A. sölībūs. | consulībūs. | passerībūs. | vulturībūs. |

II. Nouns in **o** and **r**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

|                                |                                    |                                    |                                       |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Leo, <i>m.</i><br><i>lion.</i> | Virgo, <i>f.</i><br><i>maiden.</i> | Pater, <i>m.</i><br><i>father.</i> | Pastor, <i>m.</i><br><i>shepherd.</i> |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

## SINGULAR.

|           |          |         |          |
|-----------|----------|---------|----------|
| N. leo    | virgo    | pätēr   | pastör   |
| G. leönīs | virgīnīs | pätürīs | pastörīs |
| D. leönī  | virgīnī  | patri   | pastörī  |
| A. leönēm | virgīnēm | patrēm  | pastörēm |
| V. leo    | virgo    | pätēr   | pastör   |
| A. leönē  | virgīnē  | patrē   | pastörē  |

## PLURAL.

|              |             |           |             |
|--------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| N. leönēs    | virgīnēs    | patrēs    | pastörēs    |
| G. leönūm    | virgīnūm    | patrūm    | pastörūm    |
| D. leonībūs  | virgīnībūs  | patribūs  | pastorībūs  |
| A. leönēs    | virgīnēs    | patrēs    | pastörēs    |
| V. leönēs    | virgīnēs    | patrēs    | pastörēs    |
| A. leonībūs. | virginībūs. | patribūs. | pastorībūs. |

III. Nouns in **en**, **us**, and **ut**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

|                                   |                                 |                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Carmen, <i>n.</i><br><i>song.</i> | Opus, <i>n.</i><br><i>work.</i> | Corpus, <i>n.</i><br><i>body.</i> | Capüt, <i>n.</i><br><i>head.</i> |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|

## SINGULAR.

|             |        |          |         |
|-------------|--------|----------|---------|
| N. carmēn   | öpūs   | corpūs   | cäpüt   |
| G. carminīs | opērīs | corpörīs | capitūs |
| D. carminī  | opērī  | corpörī  | capitī  |
| A. carmēn   | opūs   | corpūs   | capüt   |
| V. carmēn   | opūs   | corpūs   | capüt   |
| A. carminē  | opērē  | corpörē  | capitē  |

## PLURAL.

|                |           |             |            |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| N. carminā     | opērā     | corpörā     | capitā     |
| G. carminūm    | opērūm    | corpörūm    | capitūm    |
| D. carminībūs  | operībūs  | corporībūs  | capitībūs  |
| A. carminā     | opērā     | corpörā     | capitā     |
| V. carminā     | opērā     | corpörā     | capitā     |
| A. carminībūs. | operībūs. | corporībūs. | capitībūs. |

**52. Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen,

1. That the nouns belonging to Class II. differ from those of Class I. only in taking no case-ending in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

2. That all nouns of both classes are declined with the following

*Case-Endings.*

SINGULAR.

| Masc. and Fem.                              | Neuter.          |
|---|------------------|
| Nom. s <sup>1</sup> (cs, is) — <sup>2</sup> | ě — <sup>3</sup> |
| Gen. is                                     | is               |
| Dat. i                                      | i                |
| Acc. ěm (im) <sup>3</sup>                   | like Nom.        |
| Voc. like Nom.                              | " "              |
| Abl. ě, i                                   | ě, i             |

PLURAL.

| Masc. and Fem. | Neuter. |
|----------------|---------|
| Nom. ěs        | ă, iă   |
| Gen. ūm, iŭm   | ŭm, iŭm |
| Dat. ibŭs      | ibŭs    |
| Acc. ěs        | ă, iă   |
| Voc. ěs        | ă, iă   |
| Abl. ibŭs.     | ibŭs.   |

**53. Declension.** — To apply these endings in declension, we must know, besides the Nominative Singular,

1. *The Gender*, as that shows which set of endings must be used.

2. *The Genitive Singular* (or some oblique case), as that contains the *stem* (41) to which these endings must be added.

<sup>1</sup> In nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *s* is the case-ending, and the *c* or *g* belongs to the stem.

<sup>2</sup> The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting, as in all nouns of Class II.

<sup>3</sup> The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

## 54. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE:

## Class I.

|           |                |          |         |                   |           |
|-----------|----------------|----------|---------|-------------------|-----------|
| Rūpes,    | Gen. rupis, f. | rock;    | hospes, | Gen. hospitis, m. | guest.    |
| vestis,   | vestis, f.     | garment; | cuspis, | cuspidis, f.      | spear.    |
| trabs,    | trābis, f.     | beam;    | mons,   | montis, m.        | mountain. |
| lex,      | lēgis, f.      | law;     | āpex,   | apicis, m.        | summit.   |
| libertas, | libertātis, f. | liberty; | sālus,  | salūtis, f.       | safety.   |
| sedīle,   | sedilis, n.    | seat;    |         |                   |           |

## Class II.

|        |                         |         |         |                  |          |
|--------|-------------------------|---------|---------|------------------|----------|
| Exsul, | Gen. exsulis, m. and f. | exile;  | dōlor,  | Gen. dolōris, m. | pain.    |
| actio, | actiōnis, f.            | action; | imāgo,  | imaginis, f.     | image.   |
| anser, | ansēris, m.             | goose;  | frāter, | fratris, m.      | brother. |
| nōmen, | nomīnis, n.             | name;   | tempus, | tempōris, n.     | time.    |

## RULE XVI — Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:<sup>1</sup>

Cātōnis orātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmilcāris, *the death of Hamilcar*. Liv.

## MODEL FOR PARSING.

Cātōnis orātiōnēs, *Cato's orations*.

*Catōnis* is a proper noun, as it is the name of a person (31, 1). It is of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40); of Class II., as it has no Nominative Ending (49, II. and 51, II.): STEM, *Caṭn* (41); Nom. *Cato* (*n* dropped, 49, II.). Singu-

<sup>1</sup> The Appositive (363, p. 15) and this qualifying Genitive resemble each other in the fact that they both qualify the meaning of another noun: *Cluilius rex*, *Cluilius the king*; *Cātōnis oratiōnes*, *Cato's orations*, or the orations of Cato. Here the Appositive *rex* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *Cluilius* by showing *what* *Cluilius* is meant, — *Cluilius the king*. In a similar manner, the Genitive *Catōnis* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *oratiōnes* by showing *what* orations are meant, — *the orations of Cato*. Yet the Appositive and the Genitive are readily distinguished by the fact that the former qualifies a noun denoting the *same* person or



lar :<sup>1</sup> *Cato, Catōnis, Catōni, Catōnem, Cato, Catōne*. It is of the Masculine gender, as the names of males are masculine by 35, I. 1. It is in the Genitive Singular, depending upon *oratiōnes*, according to Rule XVI.: "Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive."

THIRD DECLENSION — CONTINUED. — CLASS I.<sup>2</sup>

EXERCISE VIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                                |                 |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Civīs, civīs, m. and f.</i> | <i>citizen.</i> |
| <i>Lex, lēgis, f.</i>          | <i>law.</i>     |
| <i>Mors, mortīs, f.</i>        | <i>death.</i>   |
| <i>Pax, pācis, f.</i>          | <i>peace.</i>   |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Nubis, nubium. 2. Nubem, nubes. 3. Avis, aves.
4. Avi, avibus. 5. Urbs, urbes. 6. Urbi, urbibus. 7. Rex, reges.
8. Regis, regum. 9. Nubēs, milēs. 10. Nubis, militis.
11. Nubem, militem. 12. Rex, judex. 13. Regis, iudicis.
14. Reges, iudices. 15. Civitas, civitates.
16. Virtus, virtutes. 17. Mors regis.<sup>3</sup> 18. Morte regis.
19. Mortes regum. 20. Virtus iudicis. 21. Pacis gloriā.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizen, to the citizen, of the citizen, of citizens, for citizens.
2. A cloud, clouds, of a cloud, of clouds, with a cloud, with clouds.
3. A king, a law. 4. Kings, laws.

thing as itself, while the Genitive qualifies a noun denoting a *different* person or thing. Thus, in the examples above, *Cluilius* and the Appositive *rex* denote the *same* person; while *oratiōnes* and the Genitive *Catōnis* denote entirely *different* objects.

<sup>1</sup> As *Cato* is the name of a person, the Plural is seldom used.

<sup>2</sup> This exercise furnishes practice in the declension of nouns belonging to Class I. of the Third Declension. See 50.

<sup>3</sup> *Regis* is in the Genitive, and qualifies the meaning of *mors*, according to Rule XVI. 395.

5. Of the king, of the law. 6. Of the kings, of the laws.  
 7. To the king, to the law. 8. To the kings, to the laws.  
 9. The law of the state.<sup>1</sup> 10. The laws of the state.

THIRD DECLENSION — CONTINUED. — CLASS II  
 PREPOSITIONS.

**RULE XXXII.** — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.<sup>2</sup>

Ad *amicum* scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In *cūriam*, *into the senate-house.* Liv. In *Italiā*,<sup>3</sup> *in Italy.* Nep. Pro *castris*, *before the camp.*

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Ad *amicūm*, *To a friend.*

*Amicūm* is a noun (31) of the Second Declension (45), as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *amic* (41). Singular: *amicus*, *amici*, *amico*, *amicum*, *amice*, *amico*. Plural: *amici*, *amicorum*, *amicis*, *amicos*, *amici*, *amicis*. It is of the Masculine gender by 45, is in the Accusative Singular, and is used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII: "The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions." The Accusative is used with *ad*.

<sup>1</sup> The Latin word for *of the state* will be in the Genitive, according to Rule XVI. 395.

<sup>2</sup> The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me. Here *in* and *ante* are prepositions. In the Vocabularies, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. It has not been thought advisable at this early stage of the course to burden the memory of the learner with a list of prepositions and their cases.

<sup>3</sup> Here the Ablative *Italia* is used with *in*; though, in the second example, the Accusative *curiam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the *Accusative* when it means *into*, and with the *Ablative* when it means *in*.

# EXERCISE IX.

## I. Vocabulary.

|                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Ad, prep. with acc.</i>       | <i>to, towards.</i>              |
| <i>Cicērō, Cicērōnis, m.</i>     | <i>Cicero, the Roman orator.</i> |
| <i>Consūl, consūlis, m.</i>      | <i>consul.<sup>1</sup></i>       |
| <i>Contrā, prep. with acc.</i>   | <i>against, contrary to.</i>     |
| <i>Exsūl, exsūlis, m. and f.</i> | <i>exile.</i>                    |
| <i>Frāter, frātris, m.</i>       | <i>brother.</i>                  |
| <i>Nōmēn, nōminis, n.</i>        | <i>name.</i>                     |
| <i>Orātiō, orātiōnis, f.</i>     | <i>oration, speech.</i>          |
| <i>Orātōr, orātōris, m.</i>      | <i>orator.</i>                   |
| <i>Victōr, victōris, m.</i>      | <i>victor, conqueror.</i>        |

## II. Translate into English.

1. Leo, leōnis, leōnes. 2. Virgo, virgīnis, virgīnes. 3. Solis, solem, soles. 4. Consūlis, consūlem, consūles. 5. Solibus, consulibus. 6. Passēris, vultūris. 7. Passērum, vultūrum. 8. Patri, pastōri. 9. Patres, pastōres. 10. Carmen, carmīna. 11. Caput, capita. 12. Opēris, corpōris. 13. Cicerōnis<sup>2</sup> oratio. 14. Cicerōnis oratiōnes. 15. Oratiōne consūlis. 16. Ad gloriā.<sup>3</sup> 17. Contra regem.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles. 3. Of an exile, of the exiles. 4. The shepherd, the orator. 5. Of shepherds, of orators. 6. Shepherds, orators. 7. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 8. A song, a name. 9. Songs,

<sup>1</sup> The *consuls* were joint presidents of the Roman commonwealth. They were elected annually, and were two in number.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XVI. 395, and Model.

<sup>3</sup> The Accusative *gloriā* is here used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII. 432.

names. 10. Of songs, of names. 11. Father, brother. 12. To<sup>1</sup> the father, to the brother. 13. Contrary to the law.<sup>2</sup> 14. Contrary to the laws of the state.

+

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

**ūs**, — *masculine* ; **ū**, — *neuter*.

They are declined as follows :

| Fructus, <i>fruit</i> . | Cornu, <i>horn</i> . | Case-Endings. |              |
|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------|--------------|
| SINGULAR.               |                      |               |              |
| N. fruct <b>ūs</b>      | corn <b>ū</b>        | ūs            | ū            |
| G. fruct <b>ūs</b>      | corn <b>ūs</b>       | ūs            | ūs           |
| D. fruct <b>ui</b>      | corn <b>ū</b>        | ui            | ū            |
| A. fruct <b>ūm</b>      | corn <b>ū</b>        | ūm            | ū            |
| V. fruct <b>ūs</b>      | corn <b>ū</b>        | ūs            | ū            |
| A. fruct <b>ū</b>       | corn <b>ū</b>        | ū             | ū            |
| PLURAL.                 |                      |               |              |
| N. fruct <b>ūs</b>      | corn <b>uā</b>       | ūs            | uā           |
| G. fruct <b>uūm</b>     | corn <b>uūm</b>      | uūm           | uūm          |
| D. fruct <b>ibūs</b>    | corn <b>ibūs</b>     | ibūs (ūbūs)   | ibūs (ūbūs)  |
| A. fruct <b>ūs</b>      | corn <b>uā</b>       | ūs            | uā           |
| V. fruct <b>ūs</b>      | corn <b>uā</b>       | ūs            | uā           |
| A. fruct <b>ibūs</b> .  | corn <b>ibūs</b> .   | ibūs (ūbūs).  | ibūs (ūbūs). |

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Cantus* song; *currus*, chariot; *cursus*, course; *versus*, verse; *genu*, knee. \

---

<sup>1</sup> To should still be regarded as a sign of the Dative, though it may sometimes be rendered by the preposition *ad*.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XXXII. 432. The words *contrary* to are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

# EXERCISE X.

## I. Vocabulary.

|                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Adventūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>          | arrival, approach.           |
| Antē, <i>prep. with acc.</i>     | before.                      |
| Caesūr, Caesūris, <i>m.</i>      | Caesar, a Roman surname.     |
| Cantūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>            | singing, song.               |
| Conspectūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>        | sight, presence.             |
| Exercītūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>         | army.                        |
| Hostis, hostis, <i>m. and f.</i> | enemy.                       |
| Impētūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>           | attack.                      |
| In, <i>prep.</i>                 | into with acc., in with abl. |
| Luscinīā, ae, <i>f.</i>          | nightingale.                 |
| Occāsūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>           | the setting, as of the sun.  |
| Post, <i>prep. with acc.</i>     | after.                       |
| Ver, vēris, <i>n.</i>            | spring.                      |

## II. Translate into English.

1. Fructus, cantus.
2. Fructibus, cantibus.
3. Cantus lusciniæ.<sup>1</sup>
4. Cantu lusciniæ.
5. Cantibus lusciniarum.
6. Adventus veris.
7. Post adventum<sup>2</sup> veris.<sup>1</sup>
8. Solis occāsus.
9. Post solis occāsum.
10. Caesāris adventu.
11. Ante adventum Caesāris.
12. Impētus hostium.
13. Impētu hostium.
14. In conspectu exercītus.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. The army, the armies.
2. For the army, for the armies.
3. Of the army, of the armies.
4. The arrival of the army.
5. Before the arrival of the army.
6. After<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, according to Rule XVI. See p. 22.

<sup>2</sup> Used with *post*, according to Rule XXXII. See p. 24.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule XXXII. 432, p. 24. The pupil will remember that the English prepositions, *to*, *for*, *with*, *from*, *by*, are generally rendered into Latin by merely putting the noun in the proper case, i.e. in the Dative for *to* or *for*, and in the Ablative for *with*, *from*, *by*. Other English prepositions, *before*, *after*, *behind*, *between*, etc., are rendered into Latin by corresponding Latin prepositions.

the arrival of the consul. 7. The singing of the night-  
ingale. 8. After the setting of the sun. 9. Before the  
attack of the enemy. 10. After the attack of the enemy.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

119. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **es**, — *feminine*,  
and are declined as follows:

| Dies, <i>day</i> . <sup>1</sup> | Res, <i>thing</i> . | Case-Endings. |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| SINGULAR.                       |                     |               |
| N. diēs                         | rēs                 | ēs            |
| G. diēi                         | rēi                 | eī            |
| D. diēi                         | rēi                 | eī            |
| A. diēm                         | rēm                 | ēm            |
| V. diēs                         | rēs                 | ēs            |
| A. diē                          | rē                  | ē             |
| PLURAL.                         |                     |               |
| N. diēs                         | rēs                 | ēs            |
| G. diērūm                       | rērūm               | ērūm          |
| D. diēbūs                       | rēbūs               | ēbūs          |
| A. diēs                         | rēs                 | ēs            |
| V. diēs                         | rēs                 | ēs            |
| A. diēbūs.                      | rēbūs.              | ēbūs.         |

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

*E* in *ei* is generally short when preceded by a consonant, otherwise long.

2. **Examples for Practice.**<sup>2</sup>—*Acies*, battle-array; *effigies*, effigy; *facies*, face; *series*, series; *species*, form; *spes*, hope.

<sup>1</sup> *Dies*, day, is an exception in Gender, as it is generally *masculine*, though sometimes *feminine* in the singular.

<sup>2</sup> Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want, in the Plural, the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. These cases must, therefore, be omitted in declining these examples.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

121. Case-Endings of Latin nouns.<sup>1</sup>

| SINGULAR.    |                   |       |                               |           |          |       |
|--------------|-------------------|-------|-------------------------------|-----------|----------|-------|
| Dec. I.      | Dec. II.          |       | Dec. III.                     |           | Dec. IV. |       |
| Fem.         | Masc.             | Neut. | M. & F.                       | Neut.     | Masc.    | Neut. |
| N. <i>ā</i>  | ūs — <sup>2</sup> | ūm    | s (es, is) <sup>3</sup> — ē — |           | ūs       | ū     |
| G. <i>ae</i> | ī                 | ī     | īs                            | īs        | ūs       | ūs    |
| D. <i>ae</i> | ō                 | ō     | ī                             | ī         | ūī       | ū     |
| A. <i>ām</i> | ūm                | ūm    | ēm (īm)                       | like nom. | ūm       | ū     |
| V. <i>ā</i>  | ē —               | ūm    | like nom.                     | like nom. | ūs       | ū     |
| A. <i>ā</i>  | ō                 | ō     | ē (ī)                         | ē (ī)     | ū        | ū     |

| PLURAL.        |      |      |          |          |             |             |
|----------------|------|------|----------|----------|-------------|-------------|
| N. <i>ae</i>   | ī    | ā    | ēs       | ā (iā)   | ūs          | ū           |
| G. <i>ārūm</i> | ōrūm | ōrūm | ūm (iūm) | ūm (iūm) | ūm          | ūm          |
| D. <i>īs</i>   | īs   | īs   | ībūs     | ībūs     | ībūs (ūbūs) | ībūs (ūbūs) |
| A. <i>ās</i>   | ōs   | ā    | ēs       | ā (iā)   | ūs          | ū           |
| V. <i>ae</i>   | ī    | ā    | ēs       | ā (iā)   | ūs          | ū           |
| A. <i>īs</i>   | īs   | īs   | ībūs     | ībūs     | ībūs (ūbūs) | ībūs (ūbūs) |

EXERCISE XI.

I. Vocabulary.

|                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Acies, aciēs, f.</i>      | <i>battle-array, army.</i> |
| <i>Amicus, ī, m.</i>         | <i>friend.</i>             |
| <i>Cibus, ī, m.</i>          | <i>food.</i>               |
| <i>Dē, prep. with abl.</i>   | <i>concerning.</i>         |
| <i>Dies, diēs, m. and f.</i> | <i>day.</i>                |
| <i>Facies, faciēs, f.</i>    | <i>face, appearance.</i>   |
| <i>Numerus, ī, m.</i>        | <i>number, quantity.</i>   |
| <i>Rēs, rēi, f.</i>          | <i>thing, affair.</i>      |
| <i>Spēcies, spēcīēs, f.</i>  | <i>appearance.</i>         |
| <i>Spēs, spēi, f.</i>        | <i>hope.</i>               |
| <i>Victoria, ae, f.</i>      | <i>victory.</i>            |

<sup>1</sup> This table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

<sup>2</sup> The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting: *er* and *ir* in Dec. II., it will be remembered, are not case-endings, but parts of the stem (45, 1).

<sup>3</sup> The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Diēi, diērum, diēbus. 2. Aciēi, aciem, acie. 3. Diem, speciem. 4. Die, specie. 5. Res, spes. 6. Rei, spei. 7. Victoriae spes. 8. Victoriae spe. 9. Diēi horae. 10. Numērus diērum. 11. Gloria, cibus, nubes, cantus, facies. 12. Glorīae, cibi, nubis, cantus, faciēi. 13. Gloriam, cibum, nubem, cantum, faciem.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A day, days. 2. Of the day, of the days. 3. For the day, for the days. 4. The thing, the things. 5. With the thing, with the things. 6. Concerning the thing, concerning the things. 7. Of the thing, of the things. 8. Concerning the battle-array. 9. Wisdom, friend, citizen, fruit, hope. 10. For wisdom, for a citizen, for hope.

## CHAPTER II.

## ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good; *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies; *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

## I. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

148. Adjectives of this class have in the nominative singular the endings:



Masc., Dec. II.

Fem., Dec. I.

Neut., Dec. II.

us —<sup>1</sup>,

a,

um.

They are declined as follows :

*Bonus, good.*

SINGULAR.

| <i>Masc.</i>             | <i>Fem.</i>  | <i>Neut.</i>  |
|--------------------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>bonūs</i> | <i>bonā</i>  | <i>bonūm</i>  |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>bonī</i>  | <i>bonae</i> | <i>bonī</i>   |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>bonō</i>  | <i>bonae</i> | <i>bonō</i>   |
| <i>Acc.</i> <i>bonūm</i> | <i>bonā</i>  | <i>bonūm</i>  |
| <i>Voc.</i> <i>bonē</i>  | <i>bonā</i>  | <i>bonūm</i>  |
| <i>Abl.</i> <i>bonō</i>  | <i>bonā</i>  | <i>bonō</i> ; |

PLURAL.

|                            |                |                |
|----------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>bonī</i>    | <i>bonae</i>   | <i>bonā</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>bonōrūm</i> | <i>bonārūm</i> | <i>bonōrūm</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>bonīs</i>   | <i>bonīs</i>   | <i>bonīs</i>   |
| <i>Acc.</i> <i>bonōs</i>   | <i>bonās</i>   | <i>bonā</i>    |
| <i>Voc.</i> <i>bonī</i>    | <i>bonae</i>   | <i>bonā</i>    |
| <i>Abl.</i> <i>bonīs</i>   | <i>bonīs</i>   | <i>bonīs.</i>  |

*Liber, free.*

SINGULAR.

|                            |                |                 |
|----------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>libēr</i>   | <i>libērā</i>  | <i>libērūm</i>  |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>libēri</i>  | <i>libērae</i> | <i>libēri</i>   |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>libērō</i>  | <i>libērae</i> | <i>libērō</i>   |
| <i>Acc.</i> <i>libērūm</i> | <i>libērā</i>  | <i>libērūm</i>  |
| <i>Voc.</i> <i>libēr</i>   | <i>libērā</i>  | <i>libērūm</i>  |
| <i>Abl.</i> <i>libērō</i>  | <i>libērā</i>  | <i>libērō</i> ; |

PLURAL

|                              |                  |                  |
|------------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>libēri</i>    | <i>libērae</i>   | <i>libērā</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>libērōrūm</i> | <i>libērārūm</i> | <i>libērōrūm</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>libērīs</i>   | <i>libērīs</i>   | <i>libērīs</i>   |
| <i>Acc.</i> <i>libērōs</i>   | <i>libērās</i>   | <i>libērā</i>    |
| <i>Voc.</i> <i>libēri</i>    | <i>libērae</i>   | <i>libērā</i>    |
| <i>Abl.</i> <i>libērīs</i>   | <i>libērīs</i>   | <i>libērīs.</i>  |

<sup>1</sup> The dash indicates that the ending is sometimes wanting. See 45, 1.

*Aeger, sick.*

## SINGULAR.

|             | <i>Masc.</i>   | <i>Fem.</i>    | <i>Neut.</i>    |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>aegr̄r</i>  | <i>aegr̄ā</i>  | <i>aegr̄ūm</i>  |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>aegr̄ī</i>  | <i>aegr̄ae</i> | <i>aegr̄ī</i>   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>aegr̄ō</i>  | <i>aegr̄ae</i> | <i>aegr̄ō</i>   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>aegr̄ūm</i> | <i>aegr̄ām</i> | <i>aegr̄ūm</i>  |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>aegr̄r</i>  | <i>aegr̄ā</i>  | <i>aegr̄ūm</i>  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>aegr̄ō</i>  | <i>aegr̄ā</i>  | <i>aegr̄ō ;</i> |

## PLURAL.

|             |                  |                  |                  |
|-------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>aegr̄ī</i>    | <i>aegr̄ae</i>   | <i>aegr̄ā</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>aegr̄ōrūm</i> | <i>aegr̄ārūm</i> | <i>aegr̄ōrūm</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>aegr̄īs</i>   | <i>aegr̄īs</i>   | <i>aegr̄īs</i>   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>aegr̄ōs</i>   | <i>aegr̄ās</i>   | <i>aegr̄ā</i>    |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>aegr̄ī</i>    | <i>aegr̄ae</i>   | <i>aegr̄ā</i>    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>aegr̄īs</i>   | <i>aegr̄īs</i>   | <i>aegr̄īs.</i>  |

1. *Bonus* is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Dec. II. (45), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Dec. I. (42), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Dec. II. (45).

2. *Liber* differs in declension from *bonus* only in dropping *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. (45, 3, 1). *Aeger* differs from *liber* only in dropping *e* before *r* (45, 3, 2).

3. Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger*.

## RULE XXXIII. — Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

*Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind.*<sup>1</sup> Cic. *Vērae amicitiae, true friendships.* Cic. *Māgister optimus, the best teacher.* Cic.

---

<sup>1</sup> Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna*. It is declined like *BONUS*: *caecus, caeca, caecum*.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

*Vērae amicitiae, True friendships.*

*Verae* is an adjective (146) of the First and Second Declensions (147): STEM, *ver* (41, 148, 1)— Singular: N. *verus, verā, verum*; G. *veri, verae, veri*; D. *vero, verae, vero*; A. *verum, veram, verum*; V. *vere, verā, verum*; A. *vero, verā, vero*. Plural: N. *veri, verae, vera*; G. *verōrum, verārum, verōrum*; D. *veris, veris, veris*; A. *veros, veras, vera*; V. *veri, verae, vera*; A. *veris, veris, veris*. It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiae*, according to Rule XXXIII: "An Adjective agrees with its Noun in **GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE.**"

EXERCISE XII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Annūlus, i, m.</i>              | <i>ring.</i>                 |
| <i>Aureus, ā, ūm,<sup>1</sup></i>  | <i>golden.</i>               |
| <i>Beātus, ā, ūm,</i>              | <i>happy, blessed.</i>       |
| <i>Bōnus, ā, ūm,</i>               | <i>good.</i>                 |
| <i>Egrēgius, ā, ūm,</i>            | <i>distinguished.</i>        |
| <i>Fidūs, ā, ūm,</i>               | <i>faithful.</i>             |
| <i>Grātus, ā, ūm,</i>              | <i>acceptable, pleasing.</i> |
| <i>Magnus, ā, ūm,</i>              | <i>great.</i>                |
| <i>Multus, ā, ūm,</i>              | <i>much, many.</i>           |
| <i>Puellā, ae, f.</i>              | <i>girl.</i>                 |
| <i>Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,</i> | <i>beautiful.</i>            |
| <i>Rēginā, ae, f.</i>              | <i>queen.</i>                |
| <i>Rēgnūm, i, n.</i>               | <i>kingdom.</i>              |
| <i>Vērūs, ā, ūm,</i>               | <i>true.</i>                 |
| <i>Vitā, ae, f.</i>                | <i>life.</i>                 |

---

<sup>1</sup> The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus*, 148.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amicus fidus.<sup>1</sup> 2. Amīci fidi. 3. Amīco fido. 4. Amīcum fidum. 5. Amīce fide. 6. Amicōrum fidōrum. 7. Amīcis fidis. 8. Amicos fidos. 9. Corōnā aureā. 10. Corōnae aureae. 11. Corōnam auream. 12. Corōnā aureā. 13. Coronārum aureārum. 14. Corōnis aureis. 15. Corōnas aureas. 16. Donum gratum. 17. Doni grati. 18. Dono grato. 19. Dona grata. 20. Donōrum gratōrum. 21. Donis gratis. 22. Ager pulcher. 23. Puellā pulchrā. 24. Donum pulchrum. 25. Agri pulchri. 26. Puellae pulchrae. 27. Dona pulchra. 28. Beātā vitā. 29. Aureus annūlus. 30. Aurei annūli. 31. Magnā gloriā. 32. Egregiā victoriā.)

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A true<sup>2</sup> friend. 2. The true<sup>2</sup> friends. 3. For a true friend. 4. For true friends. 5. Of the true friend. 6. Of true friends. 7. True glory. 8. With true glory. 9. Of true glory. 10. An acceptable word. 11. Acceptable words. 12. With acceptable words. 13. Of acceptable words. 14. A beautiful book. 15. The beautiful books. 16. With a beautiful book. 17. Of beautiful books. 18. The beautiful queen. 19. The crown of the beautiful queen. 20. The beautiful crown of the queen. 21. A good king, a good queen, a good kingdom. 22. The brothers of the good king.

---

<sup>1</sup> In Latin the adjective generally follows its noun, as in this example; though sometimes it precedes it, as in English. When emphatic, the adjective is placed before its noun; as, *Verae amicitiae*, true friendships. *Fidus* agrees with *amicus*, according to Rule XXXIII.

<sup>2</sup> Be sure and put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIII.

## II. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

150. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes:

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms, — one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms, — the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form, — the same for all genders.

151. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS of this declension have in the nominative singular:

| Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
|-------|------|-------|
| er,   | is,  | e.    |

They are declined as follows:

### Acer, sharp.

#### SINGULAR.

| Masc.           | Fem.         | Neut.         |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------|
| N. <i>ācēr</i>  | <i>ācrīs</i> | <i>ācrē</i>   |
| G. <i>acrīs</i> | <i>acrīs</i> | <i>acrīs</i>  |
| D. <i>acrī</i>  | <i>acrī</i>  | <i>acrī</i>   |
| A. <i>acrēm</i> | <i>acrēm</i> | <i>acrē</i>   |
| V. <i>acēr</i>  | <i>acrīs</i> | <i>acrē</i>   |
| A. <i>acrī</i>  | <i>acrī</i>  | <i>acrī</i> ; |

#### PLURAL.

|                   |                |                  |
|-------------------|----------------|------------------|
| N. <i>acrēs</i>   | <i>acrēs</i>   | <i>acrīā</i>     |
| G. <i>acrīum</i>  | <i>acrīum</i>  | <i>acrīum</i>    |
| D. <i>acrībūs</i> | <i>acrībūs</i> | <i>acrībūs</i>   |
| A. <i>acrēs</i>   | <i>acrēs</i>   | <i>acrīā</i>     |
| V. <i>acrēs</i>   | <i>acrēs</i>   | <i>acrīā</i>     |
| A. <i>acrībūs</i> | <i>acrībūs</i> | <i>acrībūs</i> . |

152. <sup>+</sup>II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS have in the nominative singular:

| M. and F.          | Neut.                               |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>is</b>       | <b>e</b> , for positives.           |
| 2. <b>ior (or)</b> | <b>ius (us)</b> , for comparatives. |

They are declined as follows:

Tristis, *sad*.

Tristior, *more sad*.<sup>1</sup>

SINGULAR.

| M. and F.          | Neut.            | M. and F.                | Neut.                   |
|--------------------|------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| N. trist <b>is</b> | trist <b>ē</b>   | N. tristior              | tristi <b>us</b>        |
| G. trist <b>is</b> | trist <b>is</b>  | G. tristior <b>is</b>    | tristi <b>or</b> is     |
| D. trist <b>i</b>  | trist <b>i</b>   | D. tristior <b>i</b>     | tristi <b>or</b> i      |
| A. trist <b>em</b> | trist <b>ē</b>   | A. tristior <b>em</b>    | tristi <b>us</b>        |
| V. trist <b>is</b> | trist <b>ē</b>   | V. tristior              | tristi <b>us</b>        |
| A. trist <b>i</b>  | trist <b>i</b> ; | A. tristior <b>ē</b> (1) | tristi <b>orē</b> (1) ; |

PLURAL.

|                      |                     |                         |                        |
|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| N. trist <b>ēs</b>   | tristi <b>ā</b>     | N. tristior <b>ēs</b>   | tristi <b>orā</b>      |
| G. trist <b>iūm</b>  | tristi <b>ūm</b>    | G. tristior <b>ūm</b>   | tristi <b>orūm</b>     |
| D. trist <b>ibūs</b> | tristi <b>būs</b>   | D. tristior <b>ibūs</b> | tristi <b>oribūs</b>   |
| A. trist <b>ēs</b>   | tristi <b>ā</b>     | A. tristior <b>ēs</b>   | tristi <b>orā</b>      |
| V. trist <b>ēs</b>   | tristi <b>ā</b>     | V. tristior <b>ēs</b>   | tristi <b>orā</b>      |
| A. trist <b>ibūs</b> | tristi <b>būs</b> . | A. tristior <b>ibūs</b> | tristi <b>oribūs</b> . |

153. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING. — All other adjectives have but one form in the nominative singular for all genders. They generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings. The following are examples:

Felix, *happy*.

Prudens, *prudent*.

SINGULAR.

| M. and F.             | Neut.                | M. and F.               | Neut.                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| N. fel <b>ix</b>      | fel <b>ix</b>        | N. prud <b>ens</b>      | prud <b>ens</b>        |
| G. fel <b>icis</b>    | fel <b>icis</b>      | G. prud <b>entis</b>    | prud <b>entis</b>      |
| D. fel <b>ic</b> i    | fel <b>ic</b> i      | D. prud <b>ent</b> i    | prud <b>ent</b> i      |
| A. fel <b>icem</b>    | fel <b>ix</b>        | A. prud <b>entem</b>    | prud <b>ens</b>        |
| V. fel <b>ix</b>      | fel <b>ix</b>        | V. prud <b>ens</b>      | prud <b>ens</b>        |
| A. fel <b>icē</b> (1) | fel <b>icē</b> (1) ; | A. prud <b>entē</b> (1) | prud <b>entē</b> (1) ; |

<sup>1</sup> Comparative. See 160.

| PLURAL.      |                     |                |             |
|--------------|---------------------|----------------|-------------|
| N. felicēs   | feli <i>c</i> iā    | N. prudentēs   | prudētiā    |
| G. feliciūm  | feli <i>c</i> iūm   | G. prudentiūm  | prudētiūm   |
| D. felicibūs | feli <i>c</i> ibūs  | D. prudentibūs | prudētibūs  |
| A. felicēs   | feli <i>c</i> iā    | A. prudentēs   | prudētiā    |
| V. felicēs   | feli <i>c</i> iā    | V. prudentēs   | prudētiā    |
| A. felicibūs | feli <i>c</i> ibūs. | A. prudentibūs | prudētibūs. |

### EXERCISE XIII.

#### I. Vocabulary.

|                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Acēr, ācris, ācrē,          | <i>sharp, severe.</i>        |
| Animāl, ānimālis, <i>n.</i> | <i>animal.</i>               |
| Brēvis, ē,                  | <i>short, brief.</i>         |
| Crūdēlis, ē,                | <i>cruel.</i>                |
| Dōlōr, dōlōris, <i>m.</i>   | <i>pain, grief.</i>          |
| Dux, dūcis, <i>m.</i>       | <i>leader.</i>               |
| Fertilis, ē,                | <i>fertile.</i>              |
| Fortis, ē,                  | <i>brave.</i>                |
| Nāvālis, ē,                 | <i>naval.</i>                |
| Omnis, ē,                   | <i>every, all, whole.</i>    |
| Pugnā, ae, <i>f.</i>        | <i>battle.</i>               |
| Sāpiens, sāpientis,         | <i>wise.</i>                 |
| Singulāris, ē,              | <i>singular, remarkable.</i> |
| Utilis, ē,                  | <i>useful.</i>               |

#### II. Translate into English.

1. Dolor acer. 2. Dolores acres. 3. Lex acris. 4. Legibus acris.
5. Hostis crudelis. 6. Hostem crudelem.
7. Miles fortis. 8. Virtus militis<sup>1</sup> fortis. 9. Virtute militum<sup>1</sup> fortium.
10. Ager fertilis. 11. In agro fertili. 12. Agros fertiles.
13. In agris fertilibus. 14. Post vitam brevem.
15. Pugnae navales. 16. Post pugnas navales.
17. Singularis virtus. 18. Singulari virtute. 19. Omne animal.
20. Omnia animalia.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, according to Rule XVI.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A useful citizen. 2. Of useful citizens. 3. For a useful citizen. 4. For useful citizens. 5. Of a useful citizen. 6. The wise judge. 7. Wise judges. † 8. For the wise judge. 9. For wise judges. 10. Brave soldiers. 11. For brave soldiers. 12. A brave soldier. 13. Of the brave soldier. 14. The brave leader. 15. Brave leaders. 16. The word of the brave leader. 17. By the words of the brave leader. ✓

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms to denote different degrees of quality. They are usually called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*,<sup>1</sup> high, higher, highest.

Comparatives and superlatives are sometimes best rendered into English by *too* and *very*, instead of *more* and *most*: *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, more learned, or too learned; *doctissimus*, most learned, or very learned.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. *Terminational Comparison*—by endings.

II. *Adverbial Comparison*—by adverbs. ✱

## I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

| Comparative. |      |      | Superlative. |         |          |
|--------------|------|------|--------------|---------|----------|
| M.           | F.   | N.   | M.           | F.      | N.       |
| iōr,         | iōr, | iūs. | issīmūs,     | issīmā, | issīmūm. |

<sup>1</sup> Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimus* are declined like *bonus*, 148: *altus*, *a*, *um*; *alti*, *ae*, *i*, etc.; *altissimus*, *a*, *um*; *altissimi*, *ae*, *i*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 152: *altior*, *altius*; *altiōris*, etc.



EXAMPLES.

Altus, altior, altissimus: *high, higher, highest.*  
 levis, levior, levissimus: *light, lighter, lightest.*

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxime*, most, to the positive:

Arduus, māgis arduus, maxime arduus.  
*Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.*

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Orātor clārīor, *A more renowned orator.*

*Clarior* is an adjective (146) in the Comparative degree (160, 162), from the positive *clarus*, which is of the First and Second Declensions (148). Positive, *clārus*; STEM, *clār*; Comparative, *clārīor*; Superlative, *clarissimus*. *Clarior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (152). Singular: N. *clārīor, clarius*; G. *clārīoris, clariōris*, etc.<sup>1</sup> It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātor*, according to Rule XXXIII.<sup>2</sup>

EXERCISE XIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                        |                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Altūs, ā, ūm,          | <i>high, lofty.</i>             |
| Clārūs, ā, ūm,         | <i>distinguished, renowned.</i> |
| Intēr, prep. with acc. | <i>among, in the midst of.</i>  |
| Mons, montīs, m.       | <i>mountain.</i>                |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Orātor clarus. 2. Orātor clarior.<sup>3</sup> 3. Orātor clarissimus. 4. Oratōres clari. 5. Oratōres clariōres.<sup>3</sup> 6. Ora-

<sup>1</sup> Decline through all the cases of both numbers.

<sup>2</sup> Give the Rule.

<sup>3</sup> Declined like *tristior*, 152. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

tōres clarissīmi. 7. Beāta vita. 8. Beatior vita. 9. Beatissīma vita. 10. Donum gratum. 11. Donum gratius. 12. Donum gratissimum. 13. Dona grata. 14. Dona gratiōra. 15. Dona gratissīma. 16. Milītes fortissīmi. 17. Liber utilis. 18. Libri utiliōres. 19. Libris utilissimis. 20. Mons altus. 21. Montes altiōres.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life. 9. Useful lives. 10. More useful lives. 11. The most useful lives. 12. A pleasing song. 13. A more pleasing song. 14. The most pleasing song.

## NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

### I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: <sup>1</sup>*ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: <sup>1</sup>*primus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES: <sup>1</sup>*singūli*, one by one; *binī*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

### 174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

| CARDINALS.          | ORDINALS.                 | DISTRIBUTIVES.               |
|---------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. ūnus, unā, unūm, | primus, <i>first</i> ,    | singūli, <i>one by one</i> . |
| 2. duō, duae, duō,  | secundus, <i>second</i> , | binī, <i>two by two</i> .    |
| 3. trēs, triā,      | tertius, <i>third</i> ,   | ternī (trinī).               |
| 4. quattuor,        | quartus, <i>fourth</i> ,  | quāternī.                    |
| 5. quinque,         | quintus, <i>fifth</i> ,   | quinī.                       |
| 6. sex,             | sextus,                   | senī.                        |

<sup>1</sup> Cardinals denote simply the number of objects: *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two. Ordinals denote the place of an object in a series: *primus*, first; *secundus*.

|                                 |                    |                    |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 7. septēm,                      | septīmtis,         | septēni.           |
| 8. octō,                        | octāvūs,           | octōni.            |
| 9. novēm,                       | novītis,           | novēni.            |
| 10. dēcēm,                      | dēcīmtis,          | dēni.              |
| 11. undēcīm,                    | undēcīmūs,         | undēni.            |
| 12. duōdēcīm,                   | duōdēcīmūs,        | duōdēni.           |
| 13. trēdēcīm, or dēcēm ēt trēs, | tertiūs dēcīmūs,   | terni dēni.        |
| 20. viginti,                    | vicēsīmūs,         | vicēni.            |
| 21. { viginti ūnūs,             | vicēsīmūs primūs,  | vicēni singūli.    |
| { ūnūs ēt viginti,              | ūnūs ēt vicēsīmūs, | singūli ēt vicēni. |
| 30. trīgintā,                   | tricēsīmūs,        | tricēni.           |
| 40. quadrāgintā,                | quadrāgēsīmūs,     | quadrāgēni.        |
| 50. quinquāgintā,               | quinquāgēsīmūs,    | quinquāgēni.       |
| 100. centūm,                    | centēsīmūs,        | centēni.           |
| 200. dūcenti, ae, ā,            | dūcentēsīmūs,      | dūcēni.            |
| 1000. millē,                    | millēsīmūs,        | singulā milliā.    |

## DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

## 1. Cardinals.

175. On the declension of cardinals, observe,

1. That the units, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *tres*, are declined.
2. That the other units, all the tens, and *centum*, are indeclinable.
3. That the hundreds are declined.<sup>1</sup>
4. That *millē* is sometimes declined.<sup>2</sup>

176. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

## 1. Unus, one.

|          | Singular. |       |         | Plural. |         |      |
|----------|-----------|-------|---------|---------|---------|------|
| N. ūnūs, | ūnā,      | ūnūm, | ūnī,    | ūnae,   | ūnā,    | ūnā, |
| G. unūs, | unūs,     | unūs, | unōrūm, | unārūm, | unōrūm, |      |
| D. unī,  | unī,      | unī,  | unis,   | unis,   | unis,   |      |
| A. unūm, | unām,     | unūm, | unōs,   | unās,   | unā,    |      |
| V. unē,  | unā,      | unūm, |         |         |         |      |
| A. unō,  | unā,      | unō;  | unis,   | unis,   | unis.   |      |

second. *Distributives* denote the number of objects taken at a time: *singūli*, one by one; *lini*, two by two.

<sup>1</sup> These are declined like the plural of *bonus* (148); *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*, two hundred.

<sup>2</sup> Though only in the plural, and only when used substantively. It is then declined like the plural of *mare* (50); *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*.

2. Duo, *two*.

|               |         |
|---------------|---------|
| N. duō,       | duae,   |
| G. duōrūm,    | duārum, |
| D. duōbūs,    | duābūs, |
| A. duōs, duō, | duās,   |
| A. duōbūs,    | duābūs, |

|         |
|---------|
| duō,    |
| duōrūm, |
| duōbūs, |
| duō,    |
| duōbūs. |

3. Tres, *three*.

|                 |           |
|-----------------|-----------|
| trēs, m. and f. | triā, n.  |
| triūm,          | triūm,    |
| tribūs,         | tribūs,   |
| trēs,           | triā,     |
| tribūs,         | tribūs. ✕ |

## EXERCISE XV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                             |                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| Annūs, i, m.                | year.               |
| Classis, classis, f.        | fleet.              |
| Fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. | fortitude, bravery. |
| Impēriūm, ii, n.            | reign, power.       |
| Nāvis, nāvis, f.            | ship.               |
| Proeliūm, ii, n.            | battle.             |
| Vīr, viri, m.               | man, hero.          |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Unus<sup>1</sup> liber. 2. Duo<sup>1</sup> libri. 3. Liber primus.<sup>1</sup> 4. Liber secundus. 5. Tres libri. 6. Tertius liber. 7. Tria bella. 8. Post tria bella. 9. Post tertium bellum. 10. Ante quartum bellum. 11. Quattuor<sup>2</sup> anni. 12. Post bellum quinque annōrum. 13. Decem<sup>2</sup> dies. 14. Decimus dies.<sup>3</sup> 15. Decem horae. 16. Decima hora. 17. Decem proelia. 18. Decimum proelium. 19. Hora diēi decimā.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Five friends. 2. Of five friends. 3. The fifth year. 4. The fifth day. 5. The fifth present. 6. With five presents. 7. Eight books. 8. With eight books. 9. The eighth book. 10. Before the eighth book. 11. The bravery of two soldiers. 12. By the bravery of two soldiers. ✕

<sup>1</sup> Numeral adjectives agree with their nouns, like other adjectives.

<sup>2</sup> The indeclinable numeral adjectives (175, 2) may be used without change of form with nouns of any gender, and in any case.

<sup>3</sup> Dies, it will be remembered, is generally masculine.

# CHAPTER III.

## PRONOUNS.

182. The Pronoun is that part of speech which properly supplies the place of nouns: *ĕgo*, I; *tu*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tu*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *qui*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

### I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are *ĕgo*, I; *tu*, thou; *sui* (Nom. not used), of himself, herself, itself.

They are declined as follows:

| SINGULAR.          |                 |             |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| N. <i>ĕgō</i>      | <i>tū</i>       |             |
| G. <i>mei</i>      | <i>tui</i>      | <i>sui</i>  |
| D. <i>mihī</i>     | <i>tibi</i>     | <i>sibi</i> |
| A. <i>mē</i>       | <i>tē</i>       | <i>sē</i>   |
| V.                 | <i>tū</i>       |             |
| A. <i>mē</i> ;     | <i>tē</i> ;     | <i>sē</i> ; |
| PLURAL.            |                 |             |
| N. <i>nōs</i>      | <i>vōs</i>      |             |
| G. <i>nostrū</i> } | <i>vestrū</i> } | <i>sui</i>  |
| <i>nostrī</i> }    | <i>vestrī</i> } |             |
| D. <i>nōbīs</i>    | <i>vōbīs</i>    | <i>sibi</i> |
| A. <i>nōs</i>      | <i>vōs</i>      | <i>sē</i>   |
| V.                 | <i>vōs</i>      |             |
| A. <i>nōbīs</i> .  | <i>vōbīs</i>    | <i>sē</i> . |

1. Substantive Pronouns. — Personal pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

2. Reflexive Pronoun. — *Sui*, from its reflexive signification, of himself, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

## II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

|                              |                       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| meus, <i>my</i> ,            | noster, <i>our</i> .  |
| tuus, <i>thy, your</i> ,     | vester, <i>your</i> . |
| suus, <i>his, her, its</i> , | suus, <i>their</i> .  |

They are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions;<sup>1</sup> *meus, mea, meum*; *noster, nostra, nostrum*: but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine generally *mi*, sometimes *meus*.

## III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

*Hic, ille, iste, ipse, is, idem.*

They are declined as follows:

*Hic, this.*

| SINGULAR. |       |       | PLURAL. |       |       |
|-----------|-------|-------|---------|-------|-------|
| M.        | F.    | N.    | M.      | F.    | N.    |
| N. hic    | haec  | hōc   | hi      | hae   | haec  |
| G. hujūs  | hujūs | hujūs | hōrūm   | hārūm | hōrūm |
| D. huic   | huic  | huic  | his     | his   | his   |
| A. hunc   | hanc  | hōc   | hōs     | hās   | haec  |
| V.        |       |       |         |       |       |
| A. hōc    | hāc   | hōc;  | his     | his   | his.  |

*Illē, he or that.*

| SINGULAR. |        |        | PLURAL. |         |         |
|-----------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| M.        | F.     | N.     | M.      | F.      | N.      |
| N. illē   | illā   | illūd  | illi    | illae   | illā    |
| G. illiūs | illiūs | illiūs | illōrūm | illārūm | illōrūm |
| D. illi   | illi   | illi   | illis   | illis   | illis   |
| A. illūm  | illām  | illūd  | illōs   | illās   | illā    |
| V.        |        |        |         |         |         |
| A. illō   | illā   | illō;  | illis   | illis   | illis.  |

<sup>1</sup> See *bonus* and *aeger*, 148.

*Istě, that.*

*Istě, that*, is declined like *illě*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

*Ipsě, self, he.*

| SINGULAR.        |               |               | PLURAL.        |                |                |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| M.               | F.            | N.            | M.             | F.             | N.             |
| N. <i>ipsě</i>   | <i>ipsă</i>   | <i>ipsŭm</i>  | <i>ipsi</i>    | <i>ipse</i>    | <i>ipsă</i>    |
| G. <i>ipsiŭs</i> | <i>ipsiŭs</i> | <i>ipsiŭs</i> | <i>ipsorŭm</i> | <i>ipsarŭm</i> | <i>ipsorŭm</i> |
| D. <i>ipsi</i>   | <i>ipsi</i>   | <i>ipsi</i>   | <i>ipsis</i>   | <i>ipsis</i>   | <i>ipsis</i>   |
| A. <i>ipsŭm</i>  | <i>ipsăm</i>  | <i>ipsŭm</i>  | <i>ipsos</i>   | <i>ipsas</i>   | <i>ipsă</i>    |
| V.               |               |               |                |                |                |
| A. <i>ipsō</i>   | <i>ipsă</i>   | <i>ipsō</i> ; | <i>ipsis</i>   | <i>ipsis</i>   | <i>ipsis</i> . |

*Is, he, that.*

| SINGULAR.      |             |             | PLURAL.          |                  |                    |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| M.             | F.          | N.          | M.               | F.               | N.                 |
| N. <i>is</i>   | <i>eă</i>   | <i>id</i>   | <i>ii</i>        | <i>eae</i>       | <i>eă</i>          |
| G. <i>ejŭs</i> | <i>ejŭs</i> | <i>ejŭs</i> | <i>eorŭm</i>     | <i>eărŭm</i>     | <i>eorŭm</i>       |
| D. <i>ei</i>   | <i>ei</i>   | <i>ei</i>   | <i>iis (eis)</i> | <i>iis (eis)</i> | <i>iis (eis)</i>   |
| A. <i>eŭm</i>  | <i>eăm</i>  | <i>id</i>   | <i>eos</i>       | <i>eas</i>       | <i>eă</i>          |
| V.             |             |             |                  |                  |                    |
| A. <i>eō</i>   | <i>eă</i>   | <i>eō</i> ; | <i>iis (eis)</i> | <i>iis (eis)</i> | <i>iis (eis)</i> . |

*Idem, the same.*

*Idem*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdem* to *idem*, and *iddem* to *idem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem* ; thus :

| SINGULAR.         |                |                | PLURAL.         |                 |                 |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M.                | F.             | N.             | M.              | F.              | N.              |
| N. <i>idēm</i>    | <i>eădēm</i>   | <i>idēm</i>    | <i>iidēm</i>    | <i>eaedēm</i>   | <i>eădēm</i>    |
| G. <i>ejusdēm</i> | <i>ejusdēm</i> | <i>ejusdēm</i> | <i>eorundēm</i> | <i>eărundēm</i> | <i>eorundēm</i> |
| D. <i>eidēm</i>   | <i>eidēm</i>   | <i>eidēm</i>   | <i>iisdēm</i>   | <i>iisdēm</i>   | <i>iisdēm</i>   |
| A. <i>eundēm</i>  | <i>eandēm</i>  | <i>idēm</i>    | <i>eōsdēm</i>   | <i>căsdēm</i>   | <i>eădēm</i>    |
| V.                |                |                |                 |                 |                 |
| A. <i>eōdēm</i>   | <i>eădēm</i>   | <i>eōdēm</i> ; | <i>iisdēm</i>   | <i>iisdēm</i>   | <i>iisdēm</i> . |

#### IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows :

| SINGULAR. |       |       | PLURAL. |        |         |
|-----------|-------|-------|---------|--------|---------|
| M.        | F.    | N.    | M.      | F.     | N.      |
| N. qui    | quae  | quod  | quī     | quae   | quae    |
| G. cuius  | cuius | cuius | quōrūm  | quārūm | quōrūm  |
| D. cui    | cui   | cui   | quibūs  | quibūs | quibūs  |
| A. quēm   | quā   | quod  | quōs    | quās   | quae    |
| V.        |       |       |         |        |         |
| A. quō    | quā   | quō;  | quibūs  | quibūs | quibūs. |

## V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

*Quis* and *qui*, with their compounds.

*Quis* (who, which, what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined as follows:

| SINGULAR. |       |       | PLURAL. |        |         |
|-----------|-------|-------|---------|--------|---------|
| M.        | F.    | N.    | M.      | F.     | N.      |
| N. quis   | quae  | quid  | quī     | quae   | quae    |
| G. cuius  | cuius | cuius | quōrūm  | quārūm | quōrūm  |
| D. cui    | cui   | cui   | quibūs  | quibūs | quibūs  |
| A. quēm   | quā   | quid  | quōs    | quās   | quae    |
| V.        |       |       |         |        |         |
| A. quō    | quā   | quō;  | quibūs  | quibūs | quibūs. |

*Qui* (which, what?) is generally used adjectively, and is declined like the *relative qui*.

## VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are

*Quis* and *qui*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*.<sup>1</sup>

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. *The Indefinites:*

|           |           |           |              |                       |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|--------------|-----------------------|
| aliquis,  | aliqua,   | aliquid   | or aliquod,  | some, some one.       |
| quispiam, | quaepiam, | quidpiam  | or quodpiam, | some, some one.       |
| quidam,   | quaedam,  | quiddam   | or quoddam,  | certain, certain one. |
| quisquam, |           | quidquam, |              | any one.              |

<sup>1</sup> But after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*, the Feminine Singular and the Neuter Plural have *quae* or *qua*; *si quae*, *si qua*. In like manner, *aliquis* has *aliqua* in the Feminine Singular and in the Neuter Plural.



## II. The General Indefinites:

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, every, every one.  
 quivis, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, any one you please.  
 quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or quodlibet, any one you please.

## EXERCISE XVI.

### I. Vocabulary.

|                             |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Consiliūm, ii, n.           | design, plan.            |
| Epistolā, ae, f.            | letter.                  |
| Ex, prep. with abl.         | from.                    |
| Insulā, ae, f.              | island.                  |
| Parens, parentis, m. and f. | parent.                  |
| Part, partis, f.            | part, portion.           |
| Patriā, ae, f.              | country, native country. |
| Praeclarū, ū, ūm,           | distinguished.           |
| Prātum, i, n.               | meadow.                  |
| Pro, prep. with abl.        | for, in behalf of.       |
| Quivis, quaevis, quodvis,   | whoever, whatever.       |

### II. Translate into English.

1. Mihi, tibi, sibi. 2. Ad me,<sup>1</sup> ad te. 3. Contra nos, contra se. 4. Ante vos, ante nos. 5. Pro vobis.<sup>1</sup> 6. Meā<sup>2</sup> vitā. 7. Patriā tuā. 8. Pro patriā tuā.<sup>2</sup> 9. Contra patriam tuam. 10. Nostra consilia. 11. Nostris<sup>2</sup> consiliis. 12. Vestri patres. 13. In nostrā patriā. 14. Hic<sup>2</sup> puer, hi puēri. 15. Haec corōnā, hae corōnae. 16. Hoc donum, haec dona. 17. Haec urbs praeclarā. 18. Ex hac vitā. 19. Illius libri. 20. In eā pugnā. 21. In eōdem prato. 22. Quae<sup>2</sup> urbs?

<sup>1</sup> See 184, 1. Substantive pronouns are used in the several cases like nouns, and are parsed by the same rules. See Rule XXXII. 432. Other pronouns are sometimes used as nouns, and parsed in the same way.

<sup>2</sup> The *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, and the *Interrogative* pronouns, in this exercise, are all used as *adjectives*, and agree with their nouns, like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. 438, p. 32. Hence *meā* is in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with *vitā*; *nostris*, in the Dative or Ablative Plural Neuter, to agree with *consiliis*; *hic*, in the Nominative Singular Masculine, to agree with *puer*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We, you. 2. You, me, himself. 3. For you, for me, for himself. 4. Of himself, of you. 5. Against you, against me. 6. My book, your book, his book. 7. My books, your books, his books. 8. Our parents, your parents, their parents. 9. This letter, that letter. 10. These letters, those letters. 11. This city, that city. 12. These cities, those cities. 13. After that victory. 14. The same words. 15. With the same words.

## CHAPTER IV.

## VERBS.

192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *legit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS,—which admit a direct object of their action: *servum*<sup>1</sup> *verbērat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS,—which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

## I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices:<sup>2</sup>

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acting or existing: *pater filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

<sup>1</sup> Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *beats*: *beats* (what?) *the slave*.

<sup>2</sup> *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice).

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE, — which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

## II. MOODS.

196. Moods<sup>1</sup> are either Definite or Indefinite:

I. The **Definite** or **Finite Mood**s make up the Finite Verb; they are:

1. The **INDICATIVE MOOD**, — which either asserts something as a *fact*, or inquires after the fact: *lēgit*, he is reading; *legitne*, is he reading?

2. The **SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD**, — which expresses, not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *can*, etc.: *lēgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. The **IMPERATIVE MOOD**, — which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lēge*, read thou. X

II. The **Indefinite Moods** express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives; they are:

1. The **INFINITIVE**, — which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb, without any necessary reference to person or number: *legēre*, to read.

2. The **GERUND**, — which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in **ING**: *amandī*, of loving; *amandī causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. The **SUPINE**, — which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *amātum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The **PARTICIPLE**, — which, like the English Participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and Future, — *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love: and two in the Passive, the Perfect and Future, — *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

### III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses:<sup>1</sup>

#### I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION:

1. Present: *amo*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving.
3. Future: *amābo*, I shall love.

#### II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:

1. Perfect: *amāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *amavēram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *amavēro*, I shall have loved.

### 198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. **Present Perfect and Historical Perfect.** — The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect*, or *Perfect Definite*; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect*, or *Perfect Indefinite*.

2. **Principal and Historical.** — Tenses are also distinguished as

1) *Principal*: — Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.

2) *Historical*: — Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. **Tenses Wanting.** — The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

### IV. NUMBERS.

199. There are two Numbers:<sup>2</sup> SINGULAR and PLURAL.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Tense* means *time*, and is employed to designate the *time* of an action or event.

<sup>2</sup> *Number* in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to number in nouns. See 37.

V. PERSONS.

200. There are three Persons:<sup>1</sup> FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

| Conj. I.    | Conj. II.   | Conj. III.  | Conj. IV.   |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <b>āre,</b> | <b>ēre,</b> | <b>ere,</b> | <b>ire.</b> |

202. **Principal Parts.**—Four forms of the verb—the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine<sup>2</sup>—are called, from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. **Entire Conjugation.**—In any regular verb,

1. The VERB-STEM may be found by dropping the Infinitive Ending: *amāre*; stem, *am*.

2. The PRINCIPAL PARTS may be formed from this stem by means of proper endings.

3. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of the verb through all its parts may be readily formed from these Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Person* in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to *person* in nouns. See 37.

<sup>2</sup> In the Active Voice, all these four forms are usually given as Principal Parts; but, in the Passive, only the first three.

<sup>3</sup> In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sum, *I am*.

*Sum* is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind. | Supine.         |
|------------|------------|------------|-----------------|
| sūm,       | essē,      | fuī,       | —. <sup>1</sup> |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am.*

| SINGULAR. |                              | PLURAL. |                  |
|-----------|------------------------------|---------|------------------|
| sūm,      | <i>I am,</i>                 | sūmūs,  | <i>we are,</i>   |
| ēs,       | <i>thou art,<sup>2</sup></i> | estīs,  | <i>you are,</i>  |
| est,      | <i>he is ;</i>               | sunt,   | <i>they are.</i> |

## IMPERFECT.

*I was.*

|       |                   |         |                   |
|-------|-------------------|---------|-------------------|
| ērām, | <i>I was,</i>     | ērāmūs, | <i>we were,</i>   |
| erās, | <i>thou wast,</i> | erātīs, | <i>you were,</i>  |
| erāt, | <i>he was ;</i>   | erant,  | <i>they were.</i> |

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be.*

|       |                      |         |                      |
|-------|----------------------|---------|----------------------|
| ērō,  | <i>I shall be,</i>   | ērīmūs, | <i>we shall be,</i>  |
| erīs, | <i>thou wilt be,</i> | erītīs, | <i>you will be,</i>  |
| erīt, | <i>he will be ;</i>  | erunt,  | <i>they will be.</i> |

## PERFECT.

*I have been, was.*

|         |                        |                    |                        |
|---------|------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| fuī,    | <i>I have been,</i>    | fuīmūs,            | <i>we have been,</i>   |
| fuistī, | <i>thou hast been,</i> | fuistīs,           | <i>you have been,</i>  |
| fuīt,   | <i>he has been ;</i>   | fuērunt,<br>fuērē, | <i>they have been.</i> |

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been.*

|         |                         |           |                       |
|---------|-------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| fuērām, | <i>I had been,</i>      | fuērāmūs, | <i>we had been,</i>   |
| fuērās, | <i>thou hadst been,</i> | fuērātīs, | <i>you had been,</i>  |
| fuērāt, | <i>he had been ;</i>    | fuērant,  | <i>they had been.</i> |

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been.*

|         |                             |           |                             |
|---------|-----------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------|
| fuērō,  | <i>I shall have been,</i>   | fuērīmūs, | <i>we shall have been,</i>  |
| fuērīs, | <i>thou will have been,</i> | fuērītīs, | <i>you will have been,</i>  |
| fuērīt, | <i>he will have been ;</i>  | fuērint,  | <i>they will have been.</i> |

<sup>1</sup> The Supine is wanting in this verb.

<sup>2</sup> Or, *you are*: *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse: in ordinary English, *you are* is used both in the singular and in the plural.

# SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can be.*<sup>1</sup>

| SINGULAR. |                       | PLURAL. |                     |
|-----------|-----------------------|---------|---------------------|
| sīm,      | <i>I may be,</i>      | sīmūs,  | <i>we may be,</i>   |
| sīs,      | <i>thou mayst be,</i> | sītīs,  | <i>you may be,</i>  |
| sīt,      | <i>he may be;</i>     | sint,   | <i>they may be.</i> |

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be.*

|        |                         |          |                       |
|--------|-------------------------|----------|-----------------------|
| essēm, | <i>I might be,</i>      | essēmūs, | <i>we might be,</i>   |
| essēs, | <i>thou mightst be,</i> | essētīs, | <i>you might be,</i>  |
| essēt, | <i>he might be;</i>     | essent,  | <i>they might be.</i> |

## PERFECT.

*I may or can have been.*

|         |                              |           |                            |
|---------|------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|
| fuērīm, | <i>I may have been,</i>      | fuērīmūs, | <i>we may have been,</i>   |
| fuērīs, | <i>thou mayst have been,</i> | fuērītīs, | <i>you may have been,</i>  |
| fuērīt, | <i>he may have been;</i>     | fuērīnt,  | <i>they may have been.</i> |

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been.*

|          |                                |            |                              |
|----------|--------------------------------|------------|------------------------------|
| fuissēm, | <i>I might have been,</i>      | fuissēmūs, | <i>we might have been,</i>   |
| fuissēs, | <i>thou mightst have been,</i> | fuissētīs, | <i>you might have been,</i>  |
| fuissēt, | <i>he might have been;</i>     | fuissent,  | <i>they might have been.</i> |

# IMPERATIVE.

|            |                                    |         |                       |
|------------|------------------------------------|---------|-----------------------|
| PRES. ēs,  | <i>be thou,</i>                    | estē,   | <i>be ye.</i>         |
| FUT. estō, | <i>thou shalt be,</i> <sup>2</sup> | estōtē, | <i>ye shall be,</i>   |
| estō,      | <i>he shall be;</i>                | suntō,  | <i>they shall be.</i> |

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

|                                 |                           |                            |                     |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| PRES. essē,                     | <i>to be.</i>             |                            |                     |
| PERF. fuissē,                   | <i>to have been.</i>      |                            |                     |
| FUT. fūtūrūs <sup>3</sup> essē, | <i>to be about to be.</i> | FUT. fūtūrūs, <sup>3</sup> | <i>about to be.</i> |

<sup>1</sup> The Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*: sit, he may be, may he be, let him be.

<sup>2</sup> The Future is sometimes best rendered like the Present, or with *let*: esto, thou shalt be, or be thou; suntō, they shall be, or let them be.

<sup>3</sup> *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus*; N. *futūrus*, a, um, G. *futūri*, ae, i; so in the Infinitive: *futūrus*, a, um *esse*.

### RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite<sup>1</sup> Verb agrees with its Subject<sup>2</sup> in NUMBER and PERSON:

Deus mundum aedificāvit,<sup>3</sup> *God made the world.* Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tȳrannos intrōdūcītis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES.—These agree with the subject, according to Rule XXXIII. page 32:

Thebāni accusāti sunt,<sup>4</sup> *The Thebans were accused.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted—

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, or can be readily supplied from the context:

Discipūlos mōneo,<sup>5</sup> ut stūdia āment,<sup>6</sup> *I instruct pupils to love<sup>a</sup> their studiēs.* Quint.

<sup>1</sup> See 196, I.

<sup>2</sup> With the Active Voice of a Transitive Verb, the *Subject* represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *performs* the action; as, *Deus* in the first example, *God made*: but, with the Passive Voice, it represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *receives* the action, i.e. *is acted upon*, as, *Thebāni*, 460, 1: *the Thebans were accused*.

<sup>3</sup> *Aedificāvit* is in the Third Person and in the Singular Number, because its subject *deus* is in that person and number. *Ejēci* is in the First Person Singular, to agree with its subject *ego*; and *intrōdūcītis* in the Second Person Plural, to agree with its subject *vos*.

<sup>4</sup> The verb *accusāti sunt* is in the Third Person Plural, to agree with its subject *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXV.; but the participle *accusāti*, which is one element of the verb, is in the Nominative Plural Masculine, to agree with its noun *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXIII.

<sup>5</sup> The subject of *moneo* is *ego*. It is omitted, because it is a Personal Pronoun, and is, accordingly, fully implied in the verb, as the ending *eo* shows, as we shall soon see, that the subject cannot be *you*, *he*, or *they*, but must be *I*.

*Ut—ament* means literally *that they may love*. The subject of *ament* is the pronoun *ii*, they, referring to *discipūlos*. It is omitted, partly because it is implied in the ending *ent*, but more especially because it can be so readily supplied from *discipūlos*, which shows *who* are here meant by *they*.

<sup>6</sup> *To love*, or, more literally, *that they may love*.



The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

# I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING VERBS.

In parsing a verb,

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (193), name the Conjugation to which it belongs, give the Present Indicative Active and the Stem (203).
2. Give the Principal Parts (202), and inflect the tense in which the given form is found.<sup>1</sup>
3. Give the voice, mood, tense, number, and person.
4. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

## MODELS FOR PARSING THE VERB SUM.

### 1. *Sum with Subject.*

Nōs<sup>2</sup> ērāmūs,      *We were.*

*Erāmūs* is an intransitive irregular<sup>3</sup> verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*, — <sup>4</sup>. Inflection of tense (Imperfect Indicative): *eram, eras, erat, erāmūs, erātis, erant*. The form *erāmūs* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Imperfect* tense, *First* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with its *subject nos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

### 2. *Sum without Subject.*<sup>5</sup>

Fuī, *I have been.*

*Fuī* is an intransitive irregular verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*. Inflection of tense (Perfect Indicative): *fui, fuisti*,

<sup>1</sup> That is, if the form occurs in a given tense of the Indicative, give the several forms for the different persons and numbers in that tense and mood. The teacher may also find it convenient to require the synopsis of the mood till the required tense is found.

<sup>2</sup> *Nos* is the Subject. With an intransitive verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing) who is in the condition, or state, denoted by the verb.

<sup>3</sup> Hence it does not belong to either of the regular conjugations.

<sup>4</sup> The *Supine* is wanting.

<sup>5</sup> That is, without any subject expressed.

*fuit*; *fuimus*, *fuistis*, *fuērunt*, or *fuere*. The form *fui* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *First* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with its subject *ego* omitted (though fully implied<sup>1</sup> in the ending *i* of *fui*), according to Rule XXXV.

### EXERCISE XVII.

#### I. *Translate into English.*

1. Sum, sumus, sunt.<sup>2</sup> 2. Es, est, estis. 3. Eram, erāmus.<sup>2</sup> 4. Erat, erant. 5. Eris, eritis.<sup>2</sup> 6. Erit, erunt. 7. Fui, fuēram, fuēro. 8. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 9. Fuisti, fuistis. 10. Fuit, fuērunt. 11. Fuērat, fuērant. 12. Fuērit, fuērint. 13. Sim, simus. 14. Sit, sint. 15. Essem, essēmus. 16. Esset, essent. 17. Fuērīm, fuissēmus. 18. Fuerimus, fuissēmus. 19. Fuērit, fuērint. 20. Fuisset, fuissent. 21. Es, este.

#### II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He<sup>3</sup> is, they<sup>3</sup> are. 2. He has been, they have been. 3. He will be, they will be. 4. He was, they were. 5. He will have been, they will have been. 6. He had been, they had been. 7. I<sup>3</sup> was, you were. 8. We have been, you have been. 9. You may be, they may be. 10. He would be, they would be. 11. I might have been, we might have been.

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XXXV., 2, together with the note.

<sup>2</sup> In parsing the forms contained in this Exercise, observe the second Model just given. If the verb is of the first person, supply, as subject, the personal pronoun (184) of the first person; i.e., *ego* for the singular, and *nos* for the plural. If the verb is of the second person, supply the personal pronoun of the second person; i.e., *tu* for the singular, and *vos* for the plural. If the verb is of the third person, supply the demonstrative pronoun *is* (186) for the singular, and *ii* for the plural, as the personal pronoun *sui* is not used in the Nominative:—hence, *ego sum*, *nos sumus*, *ii sunt*.

<sup>3</sup> The English pronouns in this Exercise are not to be rendered by the corresponding Latin pronouns, as the latter may be implied in the ending of the verb, as in the Latin forms above: hence, *he is* = *est*.

SUM WITH SUBJECT AND ADJECTIVE.

**RULE III.—Subject Nominative.**

✓ 367. The Subject of a Finite<sup>1</sup> Verb is put in the Nominative :

Servius<sup>2</sup> regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv. Pātent portae, *The gates are open.* Cic. Rex vicit, *The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 460, 2 ; page 54.

MODEL FOR PARSING SUBJECTS.

Rex vicit, *The king conquered.*

*Rex* is a noun (31) of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40) ; of Class I., as it has a nominative ending *s* (*x*=*g-s*, of which *s* is the ending, as *g* belongs to the stem. See 50, I. note) ; STEM, *reg*. Singular : *rex, regis, regi, regem, rex, rege*. Plural : *reges, regum, regibus, reges, reges, regibus*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 35, I. 1. ; is in the Nominative Singular ; and is the subject of *vicit*, according to Rule III. : “ The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative.”

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                          |                                      |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Cātō, Cātōnis, <i>m.</i> | <i>Cato</i> , a distinguished Roman. |
| Crūdūs, ā, ūm,           | <i>unripe.</i>                       |
| Diligens, Diligentis,    | <i>diligent.</i>                     |
| Discipulūs, i, <i>m.</i> | <i>pupil.</i>                        |

<sup>1</sup> See 196, I.

<sup>2</sup> In these examples, the subjects are *Servius*, *portae*, and *rex*.

|                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| Germāniā, ae, f. | Germany.                |
| Jūcundūs, ā, ūm. | pleasant, delightful.   |
| Laudābilis, ē.   | praiseworthy, laudable. |
| Mātūrūs, ā, ūm.  | ripe.                   |
| Pōmum, ī, n.     | fruit.                  |

## II. Translate into English.

1. Pax<sup>1</sup> jucunda<sup>2</sup> est.<sup>3</sup> 2. Pax jucunda erit. 3. Vita brevis est. 4. Cato bonus fuit. 5. Cives boni fuērunt. 6. Virtus laudabilis est. 7. Libri utīles sunt. 8. Illi libri utīles erunt. 9. Ille liber utīlis fuērat. 10. Utīlis<sup>4</sup> fuisti. 11. Utīles fuistis. 12. Germania fertilis est. 13. Agri fertilis fuērunt. 14. Pomum crudum est. 15. Poma cruda sunt. 16. Poma mātūra erunt. 17. Miles fortis est. 18. Milītes fortes sunt. †

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. The pupil is diligent.<sup>5</sup> 2. The pupils were diligent. 3. The boy is good. 4. He will be happy. 5. Good boys are happy. 6. You may be happy. 7. We might have been happy. 8. This soldier will be useful. 9. These soldiers have been useful. 10. Brave soldiers are useful. 11. You will be useful. 12. Let us be useful.

<sup>1</sup> Pax is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the Nominative, according to Rule III.

<sup>2</sup> Jucunda is an adjective in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with its noun *pax*, according to Rule XXXIII., page 32.

<sup>3</sup> Est is a verb in the Indicative mood; Present tense, Third person, Singular number, and agrees with its subject *pax*, according to Rule XXXV., page 54.

<sup>4</sup> Utīlis agrees with the omitted subject *tu*, implied in the ending of the verb.

<sup>5</sup> In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises. He will observe that the subject stands first, and the verb last. But sometimes the verb precedes one or more words in the sentence. Thus the sentence, *Pax jucunda est*, might be *Pax est jucunda*.

SUM WITH PREDICATE NOUN.

RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun<sup>1</sup> denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in CASE :

Ego sum nuntius,<sup>1</sup> *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est declārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING PREDICATE NOUNS.

Egō sūm nuntiūs, *I am a messenger.*

*Nuntius* is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has i in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *nunti*. Singular; *nuntius*, *nuntii*, *nuntio*, *nuntium*, *nuntie*, *nuntio*. Plural; *nuntii*, *nuntiorum*, *nuntiis*, *nuntios*, *nuntii*, *nuntiis*. It is of the Masculine Gender by 45; is in the Nominative Singular, and, as a Predicate Noun, agrees in case with its subject *ego*, according to Rule I: "A Predicate Noun denoting the same person, or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE."

346. I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

Miltiādes accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. / An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertātem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun,

<sup>1</sup> Every sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject.

Thus, in the first example under the Rule, *ego*, I, is the *subject*, and *sum nuntius* is the *predicate*. When the predicate thus consists of a *noun* with the verb *sum*, or of a noun with a passive verb, the noun thus used is called a *predicate noun*. Accordingly, *nuntius* in the first example, and *rex* in the second, are *predicate nouns*.

adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne*, Is he writing ? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing ?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit*, Is he writing ?

## EXERCISE XIX.

### I. Vocabulary.

|                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Ancūs, i, m.             | Ancus, Roman king.            |
| Condītōr, condītōris, m. | founder.                      |
| Dēmōsthēnēs, is, m.      | Demosthenes, Athenian orator. |
| Ebriētās, ebriētātis, f. | drunkenness.                  |
| Graecūs, ū, ūm,          | Greek, Grecian.               |
| Graecus, i, m.           | Greek, a Greek.               |
| Insāniā, ae, f.          | insanity, madness.            |
| Inventōr, inventōris, m. | inventor.                     |
| Mātēr, māttris, f.       | mother.                       |
| Mundūs, i, m.            | world, universe.              |
| Nonnē, interrog. part.   | expects answer yes.           |
| Nūm, interrog. part.     | expects answer no.            |
| Philōsōphiā, ae, f.      | philosophy.                   |
| Rōmā, ae, f.             | Rome.                         |
| Rōmānūs, ū, ūm,          | Roman.                        |
| Rōmānūs, i, m.           | Roman, a Roman.               |
| Rōmūlūs, i, m.           | Romulus, the founder of Rome. |
| Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m.    | Scipio, Roman general.        |

### II. Translate into English.\*

1. Ancus<sup>2</sup> fuit<sup>3</sup> rex<sup>4</sup>. 2. Nonne<sup>5</sup> Romūlus rex fuērat<sup>2</sup>
3. Romūlus rex fuērat. 4. Quis condītōr Romae<sup>6</sup> fuit ?
5. Romūlus condītōr Romae fuit. 6. Ebriētās est insania.
7. Patria<sup>7</sup> est parens omnium nostrum.<sup>6</sup> 8. Graeci<sup>7</sup> multārum artium<sup>8</sup> inventōres erant. 9. Demosthēnes orātor fuit.

\* For Notes to the references on this page, see page 61.

10. Num hic puer orātor erit? 11. Ille puer orātor sit.  
12. Philosophia est mater artium. 13. Cicero clarissimus<sup>9</sup>  
orātor fuit. 14. Cantus luscinae jucundissimus<sup>9</sup> est.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who<sup>10</sup> was the king? <sup>11</sup> 2. Was not<sup>12</sup> Romulus king? <sup>11</sup>  
3. Romulus was king. 4. Who was the leader of the  
Romans? 5. Was not<sup>12</sup> Scipio the leader of the Romans?  
6. Scipio was the leader of the Romans. 7. Your brother  
is an orator. 8. This boy is my brother. 9. These boys  
will be diligent pupils. 10. These pupils will be diligent.

<sup>1</sup> In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 143, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule III. page 57.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule XXXV. page 54. The verb sometimes precedes the Predicate Noun, as in this sentence; and sometimes follows it, as in several of the following sentences.

<sup>4</sup> *Rex* is a *Predicate Noun*, denoting the same person as its subject *Ancus*, and is therefore in the Nominative, to agree with that subject in *case*, according to Rule I. page 59.

<sup>5</sup> See 346, II. 1 above.

<sup>6</sup> Genitive, according to Rule XVI. page 22.

<sup>7</sup> In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What parts of speech do you find? What cases? What mood, tense, number, and person?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

<sup>8</sup> *Artium* depends upon *inventores*.

<sup>9</sup> In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *clarissimus* and *jucundissimus* (162)?

<sup>10</sup> See 188.

<sup>11</sup> See Rule I.

<sup>12</sup> *Nonne*. See 346 II. 1.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amo, *I love.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind. | Supine. |
|------------|------------|------------|---------|
| • amō,     | amāre,     | amāvī,     | amātum. |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I love, am loving, do love.*

## SINGULAR.

|         |                     |
|---------|---------------------|
| amō,    | <i>I love,</i>      |
| • amās, | <i>thou lovest,</i> |
| amāt,   | <i>he loves ;</i>   |

## PLURAL.

|         |                   |
|---------|-------------------|
| amāmus, | <i>we love,</i>   |
| amātis, | <i>you love,</i>  |
| amant,  | <i>they love.</i> |

## IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love.*

|           |                          |           |                          |
|-----------|--------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| amābam,   | <i>I was loving,</i>     | amābāmus, | <i>we were loving,</i>   |
| • amābas, | <i>thou wast loving,</i> | amābātis, | <i>you were loving,</i>  |
| amābat,   | <i>he was loving ;</i>   | amābant,  | <i>they were loving.</i> |

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will love.*

|          |                        |           |                        |
|----------|------------------------|-----------|------------------------|
| • amābō, | <i>I shall love,</i>   | amābimus, | <i>we shall love,</i>  |
| amābis,  | <i>thou wilt love,</i> | amābitis, | <i>you will love,</i>  |
| amābit,  | <i>he will love ;</i>  | amābunt,  | <i>they will love.</i> |

## PERFECT.

*I loved, have loved.*

|             |                         |                 |                         |
|-------------|-------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| amāvī,      | <i>I have loved,</i>    | amāvīmus,       | <i>we have loved,</i>   |
| • amāvisti, | <i>thou hast loved,</i> | amāvistis,      | <i>you have loved,</i>  |
| amāvīt,     | <i>he has loved ;</i>   | amāvērunt, ērē, | <i>they have loved.</i> |

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved.*

|             |                          |             |                        |
|-------------|--------------------------|-------------|------------------------|
| amāvērām,   | <i>I had loved,</i>      | amāvērāmus, | <i>we had loved,</i>   |
| • amāvērās, | <i>thou hadst loved,</i> | amāvērātis, | <i>you had loved,</i>  |
| amāvērāt,   | <i>he had loved ;</i>    | amāvērant,  | <i>they had loved.</i> |

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have loved.*

|           |                              |             |                              |
|-----------|------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------|
| amāvērō,  | <i>I shall have loved,</i>   | amāvērīmus, | <i>we shall have loved,</i>  |
| amāvērīs, | <i>thou wilt have loved,</i> | amāvērītis, | <i>you will have loved,</i>  |
| amāvērīt, | <i>he will have loved ;</i>  | amāvērint,  | <i>they will have loved.</i> |



SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can love.*

SINGULAR.

|       |                         |
|-------|-------------------------|
| amēm, | <i>I may love,</i>      |
| amēs, | <i>thou mayst love,</i> |
| amēt, | <i>he may love ;</i>    |

PLURAL.

|         |                       |
|---------|-----------------------|
| amēmūs, | <i>we may love,</i>   |
| amētīs, | <i>you may love,</i>  |
| ament,  | <i>they may love.</i> |

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should love.*

|         |                           |
|---------|---------------------------|
| amārēm, | <i>I might love,</i>      |
| amārēs, | <i>thou mightst love,</i> |
| amārēt, | <i>he might love ;</i>    |

|           |                         |
|-----------|-------------------------|
| amārēmūs, | <i>we might love,</i>   |
| amārētīs, | <i>you might love,</i>  |
| amārent,  | <i>they might love.</i> |

PERFECT.

*I may or can have loved.*

|           |                               |
|-----------|-------------------------------|
| amāvērīm, | <i>I may have loved,</i>      |
| amāvērīs, | <i>thou mayst have loved,</i> |
| amāvērīt, | <i>he may have loved ;</i>    |

|             |                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| amāvērīmūs, | <i>we may have loved,</i>   |
| amāvērītīs, | <i>you may have loved,</i>  |
| amāvērīnt,  | <i>they may have loved.</i> |

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have loved.*

|            |                                 |
|------------|---------------------------------|
| amāvissēm, | <i>I might have loved,</i>      |
| amāvissēs, | <i>thou mightst have loved,</i> |
| amāvissēt, | <i>he might have loved ;</i>    |

|              |                               |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| amāvissēmūs, | <i>we might have loved,</i>   |
| amāvissētīs, | <i>you might have loved,</i>  |
| amāvissent,  | <i>they might have loved.</i> |

IMPERATIVE.

|              |                         |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| PRES. amā,   | <i>love thou ;</i>      |
| *FUT. amātō, | <i>thou shalt love,</i> |
| amātō,       | <i>he shall love ;</i>  |

|          |                         |
|----------|-------------------------|
| amātē,   | <i>love ye.</i>         |
| amātōtē, | <i>ye shall love,</i>   |
| amantō,  | <i>they shall love.</i> |

INFINITIVE.

|                                  |                             |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| PRES. amārē,                     | <i>to love.</i>             |
| PERF. amāvissē,                  | <i>to have loved.</i>       |
| FUT. amātūrūs <sup>1</sup> essē, | <i>to be about to love.</i> |

PARTICIPLE.

|                             |                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| PRES. amans, <sup>2</sup>   | <i>loving.</i>        |
| FUT. amātūrūs, <sup>1</sup> | <i>about to love.</i> |

GERUND.

|               |                    |
|---------------|--------------------|
| Gen. amandī,  | <i>of loving,</i>  |
| Dat. amandō,  | <i>for loving,</i> |
| Acc. amandūm, | <i>loving,</i>     |
| Abl. amandō,  | <i>by loving.</i>  |

SUPINE.

|              |                           |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| Acc. amātūm, | <i>to love,</i>           |
| Abl. amātū,  | <i>to love, be loved.</i> |

<sup>1</sup> Decline like *bonus*, 148.

<sup>2</sup> Decline like *prudens*, 153.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## • PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

|            |            |             |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind.  |
| ămōr,      | ămāri,     | ămătūs sūm. |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am loved.*

| SINGULAR.                               |  | PLURAL.      |
|---|--|--------------|
| ămōr                                    |  | ămămūr       |
| ămāris, or rē                           |  | ămămīni      |
| ămătūr;                                 |  | ămantūr.     |
| IMPERFECT.                              |  |              |
| <i>I was loved.</i>                     |  |              |
| ămābār                                  |  | ămābāmūr     |
| ămābaris, or rē                         |  | ămābāmīni    |
| ămābătūr;                               |  | ămābantūr.   |
| FUTURE.                                 |  |              |
| <i>I shall or will be loved.</i>        |  |              |
| ămābōr                                  |  | ămābīmūr     |
| ămābēris, or rē                         |  | ămābīmīni    |
| ămābītūr;                               |  | ămābuntūr.   |
| PERFECT.                                |  |              |
| <i>I have been or was loved.</i>        |  |              |
| ămătūs sūm <sup>1</sup>                 |  | ămătī sūmūs  |
| ămătūs es                               |  | ămătī estīs  |
| ămătūs est;                             |  | ămătī sunt.  |
| PLUPERFECT.                             |  |              |
| <i>I had been loved.</i>                |  |              |
| ămătūs ēram <sup>1</sup>                |  | ămătī ēramūs |
| ămătūs ēras                             |  | ămătī ērātīs |
| ămătūs ērāt;                            |  | ămătī ērant. |
| FUTURE PERFECT.                         |  |              |
| <i>I shall or will have been loved.</i> |  |              |
| ămătūs ērō <sup>1</sup>                 |  | ămătī ērimūs |
| ămătūs ēris                             |  | ămătī ēritīs |
| ămătūs ērit;                            |  | ămătī ērant. |

<sup>1</sup> Fui, fuisti, etc., are sometimes used for sum, es, etc.; thus amātus fui for amātus sum. So fuēram, fuēras, etc., for ēram, ēras, etc.; also fuēro, fuēris, etc., for ēro, ēris, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be loved.*

SINGULAR.

ămēr  
ămērīs, or rō  
ămētūr;

PLURAL.

ămēmūr  
ămēmīnī  
ămētūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be loved.*

ămārēr  
ămārērīs, or rō  
ămārētūr;

ămārēmūr  
ămārēmīnī  
ămārētūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been loved.*

ămătūs sīm<sup>1</sup>  
ămătūs sis  
ămătūs sīt;

ămătī sīmūs  
ămătī sītīs  
ămătī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been loved.*

ămătūs essēm<sup>1</sup>  
ămătūs essēs  
ămătūs essēt;

ămătī essēmūs  
ămătī essētīs  
ămătī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ămārē, *be thou loved;*

ămămīnī, *be ye loved.*

FUT. ămătōr, *thou shalt be loved;*

ămătōr, *he shall be loved;*

ămantōr, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. ămārī, *to be loved.*

PERF. ămătūs essē, *to have been loved.*

PERF. ămătūs, *having been loved.*

FUT. ămătūm irī, *to be about to be loved.*

FUT. ămandūs, *to be loved.*

<sup>1</sup> *Fuērim, fuēris, etc., are sometimes used for sīm, sis, etc. So also fuīsem, fuīsses, etc., for essēm, essēs, etc.*

## MODELS FOR PARSING REGULAR VERBS.

1. *With Subject.*

Vos laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

*Laudavistis* is a transitive verb (192, 193) of the First Conjugation (201), from *laudo*; STEM, *laud*. Principal Parts: *laudo, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum*. Inflection of Tense: *laudāvi, laudavistis, laudāvī, laudavimus, laudavistis, laudavērunt, or laudavēre*. The form *laudavistis* is found in the Active voice, Indicative mood, Perfect tense, Second person, Plural number, and agrees with its subject *vos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Without Subject.*

Laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

This is parsed like *laudavistis*, above, except that it agrees with *vos*, implied in the ending *istis*; while *laudavistis*, above, agrees with *vos* expressed.

## FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Vitūpērō, ārē, āvi, ātūm, *to blame.*

Laudō, ārē, āvi, ātūm, *to praise.*

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amo, amābam, amābo.<sup>1</sup> 2. Amas, amābas, amābis.  
3. Amat, amant.<sup>1</sup> 4. Amābat, amābant. 5. Amābit, amā-

<sup>1</sup> The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe in what they are alike, and in what they are unlike. Thus *amo, amābam, amābo*, have the letters *am*

bunt.<sup>1</sup> 6. Amāmus, amabāmus, amabīmus. 7. Amāvi, amavēram, amavēro. 8. Amāvit, amavērat, amavērit. 9. Amāvi, amavīmus. 10. Amavēram, amāverāmus. 11. Amavēro, amaverīmus. 12. Amem, amārem, amavērim, amavissem. 13. Amēmus, amarēmus, amaverīmus, amāvissēmus. 14. Amet, ament. 15. Amāret, amārent. 16. Amavērit, amavērint. 17. Amavisset, amavissent. 18. Ama, amāte, amatōte. 19. Amāto, amanto.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I praise, I was praising, I will praise. 2. He praises, they praise. 3. He will praise, they will praise. 4. He was praising, they were praising. 5. You were praising, you will praise, you praise. 6. He has loved, he had loved, he will have loved. 7. I have praised, I had praised, I shall have praised. 8. He may love, they may love. 9. Let him praise, let them praise. 10. He would blame, they would blame. 11. I should have praised, we should have praised. 12. Praise thou, praise ye.

## FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

### EXERCISE XXI.

#### I. *Translate into English.*

1. Amor, amābar, amābor. 2. Amāris, amabāris, amabēris. 3. Amātur, amantur. 4. Amabātur, amabantur.

(the stem, 203) in common; but they differ from each other in the endings, —o, ābam, ābo. In the forms *amat*, *amant*, there is a still closer resemblance: not only is the stem *am* common to both, but the endings have the letters *at* in common; or, in other words, the plural ending *ant* differs from the singular ending *at* only in inserting *n*: *AT*, *ANT*.

<sup>1</sup> Here the pupil will observe that the plural ending *ābunt* differs from the singular ending *ābit*, not only in inserting *n* before *t*, but also in changing *i* into *u*: *ABIT*, *ABUNT*.

5. Amabĭtur, amabuntur. 6. Amāmur, amabāmur, amabĭmur. 7. Amātus<sup>1</sup> sum, amātus eram, amātus ero. 8. Amātus es, amātus eras, amātus eris. 9. Amātus est, amāti<sup>1</sup> sunt. 10. Amātus erat, amāti erant. 11. Amātus erit, amāti erunt. 12. Amer, amārer, amātus sim, amātus essem. 13. Amēmur, amarēmur, amāti simus, amāti essēmus. 14. Amētur, amentur. 15. Amarētur, amarentur. 16. Amātus sĭt, amāti sint. 17. Amātus esset, amāti essent. 18. Amātor, amator. /

## II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is praised, they are praised. 2. He was praised, they were praised. 3. He will be praised, they will be praised. 4. I am blamed, I was blamed, I shall be blamed. 5. You are loved, you are praised. 6. You were loved, you were praised. 7. You will be loved, you will be praised. 8. I have been blamed, you have been praised. 9. I had been blamed, you had been praised. 10. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised. 11. You may be blamed, you might be blamed. 12. He would have been blamed, they would have been praised. 13. Let him be praised, let them be praised. 14. Be thou praised, be ye praised. /

---

<sup>1</sup> The learner will observe, that, when the verb and the subject (expressed or implied) are in the Singular, the participle (*amātus*), which forms one element of the verb, is also in the Singular; and that, when the verb and the subject are in the Plural, the participle (*amāti*) is also in the Plural.

The form of the participle also varies with the *gender* of the subject, as well as with its *number*. Thus, if the subject is Masculine, the participle will be *amātus* in the Singular, and *amāti* in the Plural; if Feminine, *amāta* in the Singular, and *amātae* in the Plural; and, if Neuter, *amātum* in the Singular, and *amāta* in the Plural. Thus the participle in the compound tenses (i.e., in those which are made up of the participle and the auxiliary *sum*) agrees with the subject in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, like an adjective, according to Rule XXXV. 1, note.

FIRST CONJUGATION—BOTH VOICES.

EXERCISE XXII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Laudo, laudor.<sup>1</sup> 2. Laudābo, laudābor.<sup>2</sup> 3. Laudābam, laudābar.<sup>2</sup> 4. Laudem, lauder. 5. Laudārem, laudārer.<sup>2</sup> 6. Laudat, laudatur.<sup>1</sup> 7. Amābat, amabātur. 8. Amābit, amabitur. 9. Amet, amētur. 10. Amāret, amarētur. 11. Laudārent, laudarentur. 12. Ament, amentur. 13. Laudant, laudantur. 14. Amābant, amabantur. 15. Laudābunt, laudabuntur. 16. Amāvit, amātus est. 17. Laudavērat, laudātus erat. 18. Amavērit, amātus erit. 19. Lauda, laudāre. 20. Amāto, amātor. 21. Laudanto, laudantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He blames, he is blamed. 2. I was praising, I was praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. He

<sup>1</sup> In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Voices,—the Active and the Passive,—and observe the difference between them. The Passive *laudor* differs from the Active *laudo* only in adding *r*; the Passive *laudābar* differs from the Active *laudābam* only in taking *r* in place of *m*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the first person of the Passive is formed from the first person of the Active by simply adding *r*; or, if the Active ends in *m*, by substituting *r* for *m*. Again: the Passive *laudātur* differs from the Active *laudat* only in adding *ur*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the third person of the Passive is formed from the third person of the Active by simply adding *ur*.

<sup>2</sup> Where must we look to find the meaning of these endings,—in the Vocabulary, or in the Grammar? and where to find the general meaning of the verb? See Suggestion II. To find the meaning of the verb to which *laudābor* belongs, for what form must we look in the Vocabulary? See Suggestion VII.

will blame, he will be blamed. 5. They will praise, they will be praised. 6. We blame, we are blamed. 7. He has praised, he has been praised. 8. They have blamed, they have been blamed. 9. He had praised, he had been praised. 10. They had blamed, they had been blamed. 11. He may praise, he may be praised. 12. He would blame, he would be blamed. 13. They may praise, they may be praised.

# FIRST CONJUGATION — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.<sup>1</sup>

## DIRECT OBJECT.

### RULE V.—Direct Object.

379. The Direct Object<sup>2</sup> of an action is put in the Accusative.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*<sup>3</sup> Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpuli Rōmāni salūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

---

<sup>1</sup> It is thought advisable that the pupil should now commence a review of the grammatical forms which he has already learned. Accordingly, this Exercise will involve nouns of the First and of the Second Declension. The pupil should therefore carefully review those Declensions (42, 45). In connection with the subsequent Exercises, it is expected that the other Declensions and the other Grammatical forms will be reviewed in order, as will be indicated in the respective headings which precede the several Exercises.

<sup>2</sup> The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing, on which the action is *directly* exerted; as, *salūtem*, safety, in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i.e. the object produced by it; as, *mundum*, world, in the first example, — *made the world*.

<sup>3</sup> In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made*; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus *mundum* precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *salūtem* precedes *defendite*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem publicam* follows *libēra*.



MODEL FOR PARSING DIRECT OBJECTS.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*

*Mundum* is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *mund*. Singular: *mundus*, *mundi*, *modo*, *mundum*, *monde*, *modo*. Plural: *mundi*, *mundorum*, *mundis*, *mundos*, *mundi*, *mundis*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 45; is in the Accusative Singular; and is the Direct Object of the transitive verb *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.: "The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative."

EXERCISE XXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                           |                                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Aedificō, arē, avi, atum, | to build.                         |
| Arō, arē, avi, atum,      | to plough.                        |
| Cantō, arē, avi, atum,    | to sing.                          |
| Italiā, ae, f.            | Italy.                            |
| Libērō, arē, avi, atum,   | to liberate.                      |
| Renōvō, arē, avi, atum,   | to renew.                         |
| Spērō, arē, avi, atum,    | to hope.                          |
| Tarquīnius, ii, m.        | Tarquinius, Roman king.           |
| Thēmistōclēs, is, m.      | Themistocles, Athenian commander. |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Lusciniā laudo.<sup>1</sup> 2. Lusciniā laudāmus. 3. Lusciniās laudat. 4. Lusciniās laudant. 5. Lusciniā laudātur. 6. Lusciniā laudantur. 7. Patriā amāmus. 8. Pro patriā<sup>2</sup> pugnābimus. 9. Nonne<sup>3</sup> Themistōcles patriā liberāvit? 10. Patriā liberāvit. 11. Italiā libērāvērunt. 12. Italiā liberāta<sup>4</sup> est. 13. Tarquinius templum aedificā-

<sup>1</sup> *Lusciniā* is the Direct Object of *laudo*, according to Rule V.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XXXII. page 24.

<sup>3</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>4</sup> For agreement of participle with subject, see Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

vit. 14. Templum aedificābat. 15. Templā aedificāvērunt. 16. Templā aedificāta erant. 17. Templum aedificātum erit. 18. Puērū laudabāmus. 19. Puēri laudāti sunt. 20. Nonne<sup>1</sup> bellum renovātum est?

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The nightingale is singing. 2. The nightingales are singing. 3. The nightingales will sing. 4. The boys have been praised. 5. Did you not<sup>1</sup> praise the boys?<sup>2</sup> 6. We praised the boys. 7. The boys will be praised. 8. Have we not<sup>1</sup> liberated Italy? 9. You have liberated Italy. 10. We will liberate the country. 11. We were ploughing the field. 12. Will you plough the field? 13. The field will be ploughed.

## FIRST CONJUGATION—THIRD DECLENSION.<sup>3</sup>

### ADVERBS.

#### RULE II.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs<sup>4</sup> qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sāpientes feliciter<sup>4</sup> vivunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic. Facile<sup>4</sup> doctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud<sup>4</sup> aliter, *not otherwise.* Virg.

<sup>1</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>2</sup> The Latin word for *boys* in this sentence will be in the Accusative, according to Rule V., and will precede the verb.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil should now review the Third Declension (48–54).

<sup>4</sup> The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Feliciter*, happily, is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, live (live *happily*). *Facile*, easily, unquestionably, is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissimus*, the most learned (*easily*, i.e. *unquestionably* the most learned). *Haud*, not, is an adverb qualifying the adverb *aliter*, otherwise (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

MODEL FOR PARSING ADVERBS.

Sāpientēs felicitēr vivunt, *The wise live happily.*

*Felicitēr* is an adverb, and qualifies *vivunt*, according to Rule LI.:  
 “Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS.”

EXERCISE XXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                                 |                                       |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Elōquentiā, ae, <i>f.</i>       | <i>eloquence.</i>                     |
| Expugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,        | <i>to take, take by storm.</i>        |
| Fortitēr, <i>adv.</i>           | <i>bravely.</i>                       |
| Jūventūs, jūventūtis, <i>f.</i> | <i>youth.</i>                         |
| Ornō, āre, āvi, ātūm,           | <i>to adorn, be an ornament to.</i>   |
| Piētās, piētātis, <i>f.</i>     | <i>filial affection, piety, duty.</i> |
| Pugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,          | <i>to fight.</i>                      |
| Servō, āre, āvi, ātūm,          | <i>to preserve, keep, save.</i>       |
| Vōlō, āre, āvi, ātūm,           | <i>to fly.</i>                        |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Avis volat. 2. Aves volant. 3. Nonne<sup>1</sup> avis cantābat? 4. Aves cantābant. 5. Rex urbem<sup>2</sup> aedificāvit. 6. Urbs aedificāta<sup>3</sup> est. 7. Urbes aedificātae<sup>3</sup> erunt. 8. Milītes fortitēr<sup>4</sup> pugnāverunt. 9. Scipio<sup>5</sup> milītes laudāvit. 10. Scipio<sup>5</sup> militum virtūtem laudābat. 11. Scipiōnem laudāmus. 12. Scipio patrem servāvit. 13. Scipio urbem expugnāvit. 14. Urbs expugnāta est. 15. Milītes patriam amant. 16. Milītes<sup>5</sup> pro patriā pugnābant. 17. Piētās puēros ornat. 18. Virtūtes civitātem ornant.

<sup>1</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>2</sup> *Urbem*, direct object of *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.

<sup>3</sup> Why *aedificāta* in one case, and *aedificātae* in the other? Why not *aedificātus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

<sup>4</sup> *Fortitēr*, an Adverb qualifying *pugnāverunt*, according to Rule LI.

<sup>5</sup> In what order will you look out the words in this sentence? See Suggestion V.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The birds are singing. 2. Do you not<sup>1</sup> love birds?<sup>2</sup>  
 3. We love birds.<sup>3</sup> 4. This bird will fly. 5. Did you not<sup>1</sup>  
 save the city? 6. The soldiers saved the city. 7. Shep-  
 herds love the mountains. 8. We love virtue. 9. Is not  
 virtue loved? 10. It is loved. 11. Do not the citizens  
 praise the king? 12. They praise the king. 13. The king  
 will be praised. 14. The virtue of the king is praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.<sup>3</sup>

## EXERCISE XXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Convōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm, | <i>to assemble, call together.</i>                 |
| Duplicō, āre, āvi, ātūm, | <i>to double, increase.</i>                        |
| Dux, dūcis, m.           | <i>general, leader.</i>                            |
| Fidēs, fidēi, f.         | <i>faith, fidelity, word,<sup>4</sup> promise.</i> |
| Fūgō, āre, āvi, ātūm,    | <i>to rout.</i>                                    |
| Hōmō, hōminis, m.        | <i>man.</i>  |
| Sēnātūs, ūs, m.          | <i>senate.</i>                                     |
| Stimulō, āre, āvi, ātūm, | <i>to stimulate.</i>                               |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Homīnes<sup>5</sup> cantum lusciniæ<sup>6</sup> laudant. 2. Cantus lus-  
 cinia laudatur. 3. Romulus exercitum fugat. 4. Nonne

<sup>1</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>2</sup> Remember that the *object* in Latin usually precedes the verb.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil should now review these Declensions (116, 119).

<sup>4</sup> To keep one's word, *fidem servare*: I keep my word, *fidem meam servo*, or *fidem servo*, as the Latin possessives, *meus*, my, *tuus*, your, etc., when not emphatic, are often omitted; when expressed, they usually follow their nouns.

<sup>5</sup> In this sentence, what order will you follow, in accordance with Suggestion V., in looking out the words in the Vocabulary? In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *homīnes* (51, II.), *mīlites* (50, II.), *stimulāvit* (205)?

<sup>6</sup> See Rule XVI. page 22.

exercitum fugavimus? 5. Exercitus fugatus est. 6. Exercitus fugatus erit. 7. Consul senatum convocavit. 8. Senatus convocatus est. 9. Senatus consulem laudavit. 10. Spes victoriae milites stimulavit. 11. Numerum dierum duplicavi. 12. Numerus dierum duplicatus est.

### III. Translate into Latin.

1. The boy has kept his word.<sup>1</sup> 2. Will you not keep your word? 3. We will keep our word. 4. The consul praised the fidelity of the citizens. 5. Will not the fidelity of the citizens be praised? 6. Will not the citizens praise the fidelity of the army? 7. They have praised the fidelity of the army. 8. Did not the general praise the army? 9. He praised the army. 10. The army will be praised.

## FIRST CONJUGATION — ADJECTIVES.<sup>2</sup>

### EXERCISE XXVI.

#### I. Vocabulary.

|                           |                                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Ampliō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,   | to enlarge.                     |
| Condemnō, ārē, āvi, ātūm, | to condemn.                     |
| Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, m.  | Hannibal, Carthaginian general. |
| Innōcens, innōcentis,     | innocent.                       |
| Nōbilis, ē,               | noble.                          |
| Nōvūs, ū, ūm,             | new.                            |
| Occūpō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,   | to occupy.                      |
| Pūnicūs, ū, ūm,           | Carthaginian, Punic.            |

<sup>1</sup> See note 4, preceding page.

<sup>2</sup> The pupil should now review Adjectives (146-162).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rex urbem novam<sup>1</sup> ampliābat. 2. Urbem novam ampliābunt. 3. Rex urbem pulchram<sup>1</sup> ampliavērat. 4. Urbs pulchra servāta<sup>2</sup> est. 5. Hannibal multas civitates occupavit. 6. Judices hominem innocentissimum<sup>3</sup> condemnaverunt. 7. Num Punicum bellum renovatum est? 8. Nonne Punicum bellum renovatum est? 9. Punicum bellum renovatum est. 10. Romani nobilissimas<sup>3</sup> urbes expugnaverunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the brave soldiers save the city? 2. The brave soldiers will save the beautiful city. 3. The noble city will be saved. 4. We praise good boys. 5. Good boys will be praised. 6. Do you not praise diligent pupils? 7. Diligent pupils are praised. 8. The citizens praise the brave soldiers.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PRONOUNS.<sup>4</sup>

## EXERCISE XXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                                      |                             |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Aliquis, aliquā, aliquid or aliquod, | <i>some one, somebody.</i>  |
| Dēlectō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,             | <i>to delight.</i>          |
| Diligentiā, ae, f.                   | <i>diligence.</i>           |
| Nōn, adv.                            | <i>not.</i>                 |
| Sālūtō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,              | <i>to salute.</i>           |
| Suūs, ū, ūm,                         | <i>his, her, us, their.</i> |

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

<sup>2</sup> Why *servāta* rather than *servātus*? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, p. 54.

<sup>3</sup> In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 162.

<sup>4</sup> The pupil should now review Pronouns (182–191).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hanc<sup>1</sup> urbem servābit? 2. Hanc urbem pulchram servabimus. 3. Quis te<sup>2</sup> salutāvit? 4. Pater meus<sup>1</sup> te salutāt. 5. Haec<sup>1</sup> vita te delectat. 6. Philosophia nos<sup>2</sup> delectat. 7. Omnia animalia se<sup>2</sup> amant. 8. Fratres tui<sup>1</sup> laudantur. 9. Fratres mei laudāti sunt. 10. Puer parentes suos<sup>3</sup> amat. 11. Puēri boni parentes suos<sup>3</sup> amant. 12. Parentes nostros amāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you blame me? 2. We do not<sup>4</sup> blame you. 3. Whom do you blame? 4. We blame your brother. 5. This book delights me. 6. These books delighted us. 7. Did not<sup>5</sup> your father praise you? 8. He praised us. 9. Did not<sup>5</sup> some one praise your diligence? 10. Our parents praised our diligence. 11. Did your brother blame you? 12. He did not<sup>4</sup> blame me. 13. He blamed himself. 14. He will be blamed.

---

<sup>1</sup> These Pronouns are all used as adjectives, and agree with their nouns like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32. Pronouns thus used as adjectives generally precede their nouns; but the Possessive Pronouns, *meus, tuus*, etc. (185), generally follow their nouns, as in this Exercise.

<sup>2</sup> Personal Pronouns, it will be remembered, are used as substantives (184). They are accordingly governed like any other substantives. See Rule V. p. 70. Observe that the object precedes the verb.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil will observe that *suos* in the tenth sentence must be rendered *his*, while in the eleventh it must be rendered *their*. Thus the meaning of the Possessive *suus* depends in part upon the *number* of the word to which it refers. It must be rendered *his* (*her, its*) when that word, as *puer* in the tenth sentence, is in the *Singular*; but it must be rendered *their* when that word, as *puēri* in the eleventh sentence, is in the *Plural*.

<sup>4</sup> When a verb with a direct object has also an adverb qualifying it, the usual order is *Object, Adverb, Verb*; but the adverb *non*, not, may stand either *before* or *after* the object.

<sup>5</sup> Nonne.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind. | Supine.  |
|------------|------------|------------|----------|
| mōneō,     | mōnērē,    | mōnuī,     | mōnītūm. |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I advise.*

## SINGULAR.

mōneō  
mōnēs  
mōnēt;

## PLURAL.

mōnēmūs  
mōnētis  
mōnent.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising.*

mōnēbām  
mōnēbās  
mōnēbāt;

mōnēbāmūs  
mōnēbātis  
mōnēbant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.*

mōnēbō  
mōnēbīs  
mōnēbīt;

mōnēbīmūs  
mōnēbītis  
mōnēbunt.

## PERFECT.

*I advised or have advised.*

mōnuī  
mōnuistī  
mōnuist;

mōnuimūs  
mōnuistis  
mōnuērunt, or ērē.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.*

mōnuērām  
mōnuērās  
mōnuērāt;

mōnuērāmūs  
mōnuērātis  
mōnuērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.*

mōnuērō  
mōnuērīs  
mōnuērīt;

mōnuērīmūs  
mōnuērītis  
mōnuērint.



SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can advise.*

SINGULAR.

mōneā<sup>m</sup>  
mōneās  
mōneāt;

PLURAL.

mōneām<sup>us</sup>  
mōneātis  
mōneant.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should advise.*

mōnērēm  
mōnērēs  
mōnērēt;

mōnērēm<sup>us</sup>  
mōnērētis  
mōnērent.

PERFECT.

*I may have advised.*

mōnuērīm  
mōnuērīs  
mōnuērīt;

mōnuērīm<sup>us</sup>  
mōnuērītis  
mōnuērint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have advised.*

mōnuissēm  
mōnuissēs  
mōnuissēt;

mōnuissēm<sup>us</sup>  
mōnuissētis  
mōnuissent.

IMPERATIVE.

|              |                    |  |           |                   |
|--------------|--------------------|--|-----------|-------------------|
| PRES. mōnē,  | advise thou;       |  | mōnētē,   | advise ye.        |
| FUT. mōnētō, | thou shalt advise, |  | mōnētōtē, | ye shall advise,  |
| mōnētō,      | he shall advise;   |  | mōnentō,  | they shall advise |

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

|                 |                  |  |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|--|-----------------|------------------|
| PRES. mōnērē,   | to advise.       |  | PRES. mōnens,   | advising.        |
| PERF. mōnuissē, | to have advised. |  |                 |                  |
| FUT. mōnītūrus  | essē, to be      |  | FUT. mōnītūrus, | about to advise. |
|                 | about to advise. |  |                 |                  |

GERUND.

SUPINE.

|               |               |  |              |                        |
|---------------|---------------|--|--------------|------------------------|
| Gen. mōnendī, | of advising,  |  |              |                        |
| Dat. mōnendō, | for advising, |  |              |                        |
| Acc. mōnendū, | advising,     |  | Acc. mōnītū, | to advise,             |
| Abl. mōnendō, | by advising.  |  | Abl. mōnītā, | to advise, be advised. |

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

|            |            |              |
|------------|------------|--------------|
| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind.   |
| mōneōr,    | mōnēri,    | mōnītūs sūm. |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am advised.*

## SINGULAR.

mōneōr  
mōnēris, or rē  
mōnētūr;

## PLURAL.

mōnēmūr  
mōnēmīni  
mōnentūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advised.*

mōnēbār  
mōnēbāris, or rē  
mōnēbātūr;

mōnēbāmūr  
mōnēbāmīni  
mōnēbantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be advised.*

mōnēbōr  
mōnēbēris, or rē  
mōnēbītūr;

mōnēbīmūr  
mōnēbīmīni  
mōnēbuntūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was advised.*

mōnītūs sūm<sup>1</sup>  
mōnītūs ēs  
mōnītūs est;

mōnītī sūmūs  
mōnītī estīs  
mōnītī sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*

mōnītūs ērām<sup>1</sup>  
mōnītūs ērās  
mōnītūs erāt;

mōnītī ērāmus  
mōnītī ērātīs  
mōnītī ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*

mōnītūs ērō<sup>1</sup>  
mōnītūs ēris  
mōnītūs erit;

mōnītī ērīmūs  
mōnītī erītīs  
mōnītī erunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be advised.*

SINGULAR.

mōneār  
mōneāris, or rē  
mōneātūr;

PLURAL.

mōneāmūr  
mōneāminī  
mōneantūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be advised.*

mōnērēr  
mōnērēris, or rē  
mōnērētūr;

mōnērēmūr  
mōnērēminī  
mōnērentūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been advised.*

mōnītūs sīm<sup>1</sup>  
mōnītūs sis  
mōnītūs sit;

mōnītī simūs  
mōnītī sitis  
mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been advised.*

mōnītūs essēm<sup>1</sup>  
mōnītūs essēs  
mōnītūs essēt;

mōnītī essēmūs  
mōnītī essētis  
mōnītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, *be thou advised;* | mōnēmīnī, *be ye advised.*

FUT. mōnētōr, *thou shalt be advised,*  
mōnētōr, *he shall be advised;*

mōnentōr, *they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnērī, *to be advised,*

PERF. mōnītūs essē, *to have been advised,*

FUT. mōnītūm irī, *to be about to be advised.*

PERF. mōnītūs, *advised,*

FUT. mōnendūs, *to be advised.*

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

## SECOND CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                                |                   |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| Mōneĉ, mōnĕrĕ, mōnui, mōnītūm, | <i>to advise.</i> |
| Pāreĉ, pārĕrĕ, pārui, pārītūm, | <i>to obey.</i>   |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneo, monēbam, monēbo.<sup>1</sup> 2. Mones, monētis. 3. Monet, monent. 4. Monēmus, monebāmus, monebīmus. 5. Monēbant, monēbunt. 6. Monui, monuēram, monuēro. 7. Monuīmus, monuerāmus, monuerīmus. 8. Monuit, monuērunt. 9. Monuērat, monuērant. 10. Monuērit, monuērint. 11. Moneam, monērem, monuērim, monuissēm. 12. Moneat, moneant. 13. Monēret, monērent. 14. Monuērit, monuērint. 15. Monuisset, monuissent.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You advise, you were advising, you will advise. 2. He obeys, they obey. 3. He was obeying, they were obeying. 4. He will advise, they will advise. 5. He has obeyed, he had obeyed, he will have obeyed. 6. They have advised, they had advised, they will have advised. 7. I have advised, we have advised. 8. I had advised, I had obeyed. 9. He may advise, he may obey.

---

<sup>1</sup> The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe wherein they differ from each other.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                        |                 |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| Cantō, āre, āvi, ātūm, | <i>to sing.</i> |
| Spērō, āre, āvi. ātūm, | <i>to hope.</i> |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sperat, paret.<sup>1</sup> 2. Sperant, parent. 3. Sperāmus, parēmus. 4. Sperābat, parēbat. 5. Sperābant, parēbant. 6. Sperābam, parēbam. 7. Sperabāmus, parebāmus. 8. Sperabīmus, parebīmus. 9. Sperābo, parēbo. 10. Sperāvi, parui. 11. Speravēram, paruēram. 12. Speravēro, paruēro. 13. Speravīmus, paruīmus. 14. Speravērat, paruērat. 15. Speravērint, paruērint. 16. Sperāte, parēte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I sing, I advise. 2. I was singing, I was advising. 3. I will sing, I will advise. 4. He will hope, he will obey. 5. They will hope, they will obey. 6. They were singing, they were advising. 7. They sing, they advise. 8. He has hoped, he has obeyed. 9. They have hoped, they have obeyed. 10. He had sung, he had obeyed. 11. They had sung, they had obeyed. 12. We had hoped, we had advised. 13. We would sing, we would obey.

---

<sup>1</sup> In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Conjugations,—the First and the Second,—and should carefully observe the difference between them.

SECOND CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.  
OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

## EXERCISE XXX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| Aurūm, i, <i>n.</i>                    | <i>gold.</i>                 |
| Flōs, flōris, <i>m.</i>                | <i>flower.</i>               |
| Hābeō, hābērē, hābuī, hābitūm,         | <i>to have, hold.</i>        |
| Mēreō, mērērē, mēruī, mērītūm,         | <i>to deserve, merit.</i>    |
| Philōsōphūs, i, <i>m.</i>              | <i>philosopher.</i>          |
| Pondūs, pondēris, <i>n.</i>            | <i>weight, mass.</i>         |
| Praebeō, praebērē, praebuī, praebītūm, | <i>to furnish, give.</i>     |
| Praemiūm, ii, <i>n.</i>                | <i>reward.</i>               |
| Tāceō, tācērē, tācuī, tācītūm,         | <i>to be silent.</i>         |
| Terreō, terrērē, terruī, terrītūm,     | <i>to frighten, terrify.</i> |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Puer librum habēt. 2. Puēri libros habent. 3. Libros utiles<sup>1</sup> habēmus. 4. Librum utīlem habuisti. 5. Nonne bonum<sup>1</sup> amicum habēbis? 6. Bonum amicum habēbo. 7. Bonos amicos habuīmus. 8. Rex amicos habēbat. 9. Rex aurum habēbat. 10. Rex<sup>2</sup> magnum auri pondus<sup>3</sup> habuērat. 11. Gloriam veram habebītis. 12. Ver praebet flores. 13. Ver praebēbit flores. 14. Philōsōphus tacēbat. 15. Dis-cipūlus praemium meret.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the Latin adjective may either precede or follow its noun; though it seems more frequently to follow, unless it is emphatic.

<sup>2</sup> In this sentence, endeavor, in accordance with Suggestion IV., to discover the *subject*, *verb*, and *object*, before looking out the words in the Vocabulary. In what order will you look out the words in accordance with Suggestion V.?

<sup>3</sup> When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, as *pondus* by *magnum* and *auri*, the adjective usually precedes both nouns, and is followed by the genitive, as in this example: *magnum auri pondus*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has my book? 2. I have your book. 3. Which book have you? 4. I have three<sup>1</sup> books. 5. My brother has ten books. 6. The king had a golden crown. 7. Did he not have many friends? 8. He had many friends. 9. You will have true friends. 10. The pupils are silent.<sup>2</sup> 11. Will you not be silent? 12. We will be silent.

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneor, monēbar, monēbor. 2. Monēmur, monebāmur, monebīmur. 3. Moneātur, moneantur. 4. Monerētur, monerentur. 5. Monītus est, monīti sunt. 6. Monītus erat, monīti erant. 7. Monītus erit, monīti erunt. 8. Monētor, monentor. 9. Monet, monētur. 10. Monent, monentur. 11. Monēbat, Monebātur. 12. Monēbant, monebantur. 13. Monēbit, monebītur. 14. Monēbunt, monebuntur. 15. Monēmus, monēmur. 16. Monebāmus, Monebāmur. 17. Monebīmus, monebīmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is advised, they are advised. 2. I was terrified, we were terrified. 3. He will be advised, they will be advised. 4. You have been terrified, I have been terrified. 5. He had been advised, he had been terrified. 6. I shall have been advised, I shall have been terrified. 7. I advise, I am advised. 8. I was advising, I was advised. 9. I shall advise, I shall be advised. 10. They terrify, they are terrified. 11. They were terrifying, they were terrified. 12. They will terrify, they will be terrified.

---

<sup>1</sup> Place the Numeral *before* the noun.

<sup>2</sup> *Are silent* is to be rendered by the Latin verb *taceo*.

## FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| Admōneō, admōnērē, admōnuī, admōnītūm, | <i>to admonish.</i> |
| Amō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,                   | <i>to love.</i>     |
| Invitō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,                | <i>to invite.</i>   |
| Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,                 | <i>to praise.</i>   |
| Terreō, terrērē, terruī, terrītūm,     | <i>to terrify.</i>  |
| Vitūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,              | <i>to blame.</i>    |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitātur, terrētur. 2. Invitantur, terrentur. 3. Invitāmur, terrēmur. 4. Invitabāmur, terreabāmur. 5. Invitabātur, terreabātur. 6. Invitabantur, terreabantur. 7. Invitabuntur, terreabuntur. 8. Invitabītur, terreabītur. 9. Invitābor, terrēbor. 10. Invitātus sum, terrītus sum. 11. Invitāti sumus, terrīti sumus. 12. Invitātus est, terrītus est. 13. Invitāti sunt, terrīti sunt. 14. Invitāti erant, terrīti erant. 15. Invitātus erat, terrītus erat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am invited, I am admonished. 2. You are invited, you are admonished. 3. He was praised, he was advised. 4. They were praised, they were advised. 5. You will be invited, you will be admonished. 6. He has been blamed, he has been terrified. 7. They had been loved, they had been admonished. 8. They will have been invited, they



will have been admonished. 9. I may be invited, I may be admonished. 10. I should be invited, I should be admonished.

## SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

### EXERCISE XXXIII.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

|  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| Apūd, <i>prep. with acc.</i>           | <i>near, before, among.</i> |
| Exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitum, | <i>to exercise, train.</i>  |
| Frāter, frātis, <i>m.</i>              | <i>brother.</i>             |
| Māgistēr, māgistrī, <i>m.</i>          | <i>master, teacher.</i>     |
| Mēmōriā, <i>ae, f.</i>                 | <i>memory.</i>              |
| Puēr, puērī, <i>m.</i>                 | <i>boy.</i>                 |
| Quis, quae, quid, <sup>1</sup>         | <i>who, which, what?</i>    |
| Rectē, <i>adv.</i>                     | <i>rightly.</i>             |
| Tuū, ā, ūm,                            | <i>your, yours.</i>         |

#### II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis monētur? 2. Nonne puer monētur? 3. Puer recte monētur. 4. Puēri recte monentur. 5. Discipuli recte monīti sunt. 6. Discipulus recte monitus est. 7. Frater tuus recte admonitus erit. 8. Fratres tui recte admonīti erunt. 9. Nonne admonīti sumus? 10. Recte admonīti sumus. 11. Memoria exercetur. 12. Memoria

---

<sup>1</sup> For the declension of the Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, see 188.

exerceatur.<sup>1</sup> 13. Memoria exercebĭtur. 14. Discipŭli apud magistros exercentur.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were not the boys terrified? 2. They were terrified.  
3. Let<sup>2</sup> the pupils be admonished. 4. They have been admonished. 5. Who will be advised? 6. These boys will be advised. 7. Has your memory been exercised? 8. My memory has been exercised. 9. Was not the general terrified? 10. The general himself<sup>3</sup> was not terrified. 11. The soldiers were terrified.

## FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

### EXERCISE XXXIV.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

|                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Cămillŭs, <i>m.</i>          | <i>Camillus</i> , Roman general. |
| Exspectă, ăre, ăvi, ătŭm,    | <i>to await, expect.</i>         |
| Hostĭs, <i>is, m. and f.</i> | <i>enemy.</i>                    |
| Ingens, ingentĭs,            | <i>huge, large, great.</i>       |
| Lęgiă, lęgiōnis, <i>f.</i>   | <i>legion, body of soldiers.</i> |
| Nŏn, <i>adv.</i>             | <i>not.</i>                      |
| Nŭmęrŭs, <i>m.</i>           | <i>number.</i>                   |
| Optă, ăre, ăvi, ătŭm,        | <i>to wish for, desire.</i>      |
| Pęcŭniă, <i>ae, f.</i>       | <i>money.</i>                    |

<sup>1</sup> *Exerceatur*; the Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*. See 196. I. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Let be admonished* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

<sup>3</sup> *Himself* = *ipse*. See 186.

|                              |                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| Philōsōphūs, i, m.           | <i>philosopher.</i>    |
| Praeceptōr, praeceptōrīs, m. | <i>teacher.</i>        |
| Proeliūm, ii, n.             | <i>battle.</i>         |
| Rōmānūs, i, m.               | <i>Roman, a Roman.</i> |
| Sūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm,      | <i>to conquer.</i>     |
| Vērēcundiā, ae, f.           | <i>modesty.</i>        |

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Camillus hostes superāvit. 2. Hostes superāti sunt.  
 3. Omnes discipūli paruērānt.<sup>1</sup> 4. Romāni hostem expectā-  
 bant. 5. Romāni<sup>2</sup> ingentem hostium numērum<sup>3</sup> expecta-  
 vērant.<sup>1</sup> 6. Hostes proelium expectābant. 7. Praeceptor  
 tacēbat. 8. Discipūli tacēbant. 9. Verecundia juventūtem  
 ornat. 10. Philosophus pecuniam non habet. 11. Philos-  
 ōphi pecuniam non optant.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are you expecting me? 2. We are expecting you.  
 3. Did you not await the enemy?<sup>4</sup> 4. We awaited the  
 enemy. 5. Have you not a good memōry? 6. I have a  
 good memory. 7. Will the soldiers obey? 8. The brave  
 soldiers will obey. 9. Camillus had an army. 10. He  
 praised the army. 11. Did you advise the boy? 12. We  
 advised the boys. 13. Were not the enemy put to flight?<sup>5</sup>  
 14. They were put to flight.

---

<sup>1</sup> In accordance with Suggestion VII. 3, for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 205, 207.

<sup>2</sup> Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

<sup>3</sup> *Ingentem hostium numērum*, for arrangement see note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX.

<sup>4</sup> Put the Latin word in the plural.

<sup>5</sup> Put to *flight* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

|            |            |            |         |
|------------|------------|------------|---------|
| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind. | Supine. |
| regō,      | regēre,    | rexī,      | rectūm. |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I rule.*

## SINGULAR.

regō  
regis  
regit ;

## PLURAL.

regimūs  
regitis  
regunt.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling.*

regēbam  
regēbās  
regēbāt ;

regēbamūs  
regēbātis  
regēbant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will rule.*

regām  
regēs  
regēt ;

regēmūs  
regētis  
regent.

## PERFECT.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

rexī  
rexisti  
rexit ;

reximūs  
rexistis  
rexerunt, or erē.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled.*

rexerām  
rexerās  
rexerāt ;

rexerāmūs  
rexerātis  
rexerant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have ruled.*

rexerō  
rexeris  
rexerit ;

rexerimūs  
rexeritis  
rexerint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can rule.*

SINGULAR.

rēgā<sup>m</sup>  
rēgās  
rēgāt;

PLURAL.

rēgāmūs  
rēgātis  
rēgant.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*

rēgērēm  
rēgērēs  
rēgēret;

rēgērēmūs  
rēgērētis  
rēgērent.

PERFECT.

*I may have ruled.*

rexērīm  
rexērīs  
rexērīt;

rexērīmūs  
rexērītis  
rexērint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

rexissēm  
rexissēs  
rexissēt;

rexissēmūs  
rexissētis  
rexissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. regē, rule thou;

rēgītē, rule ye.

FUT. rēgītō, thou shalt rule,  
rēgītō, he shall rule;

rēgītōtē, ye shall rule,  
rēguntō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, to rule.

PERF. rexissē, to have ruled.

FUT. rectūrūs essē, to be about  
to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgens, ruling.

FUT. rectūrūs, about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. rēgendī, of ruling,  
Dat. rēgendō, for ruling,  
Acc. rēgendūm, ruling,  
Abl. rēgendō, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. rectūm, to rule,  
Abl. rectū, to rule, be ruled.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind.  |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| regōr,     | regī,      | rectus sum. |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am ruled.*

| SINGULAR.                               | PLURAL.      |
|---|--------------|
| regōr                                   | regimur      |
| regēris, or rē                          | regimini     |
| regitur;                                | reguntur.    |
| IMPERFECT.                              |              |
| <i>I was ruled.</i>                     |              |
| regēbār                                 | regēbāmur    |
| regēbāris, or rē                        | regēbāmini   |
| regēbātūr;                              | regēbantūr.  |
| FUTURE.                                 |              |
| <i>I shall or will be ruled.</i>        |              |
| regār                                   | regēmur      |
| regēris, or rē                          | regēmini     |
| regētūr;                                | regentūr.    |
| PERFECT.                                |              |
| <i>I have been or was ruled.</i>        |              |
| rectus sum <sup>1</sup>                 | recti sumus  |
| rectus es                               | recti estis  |
| rectus est;                             | recti sunt.  |
| PLUPERFECT.                             |              |
| <i>I had been ruled.</i>                |              |
| rectus eram <sup>1</sup>                | recti erāmus |
| rectus erās                             | recti erātis |
| rectus erāt;                            | recti erant. |
| FUTURE PERFECT.                         |              |
| <i>I shall or will have been ruled.</i> |              |
| rectus erō <sup>1</sup>                 | recti erimus |
| rectus eris                             | recti eritis |
| rectus erit;                            | recti erunt. |

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be ruled.*

SINGULAR.

rēgār  
rēgāris, or rē  
rēgātūr;

PLURAL.

rēgāmūr  
rēgāminī  
rēgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

rēgērēr  
rēgērōris, or rē  
rēgērētūr;

rēgērēmūr  
rēgērēmīnī  
rēgērentūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been ruled.*

rectūs sīm<sup>1</sup>  
rectūs sis  
rectūs sit;

rectī simūs  
rectī sitīs  
rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

rectūs essēm<sup>1</sup>  
rectūs essēs  
rectūs essēt;

rectī essēmūs  
rectī essētīs  
rectī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

\* PRES. rēgērē, be thou ruled; | rēgīminī, be ye ruled.

FUT. rēgītōr, thou shalt be ruled, |  
rēgītōr, he shall be ruled; | rēgantōr, ye shall be ruled.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgī, to be ruled.

PERF. rectūs essē, to have been ruled.

FUT. rectūm irī, to be about to be ruled.

PERF. rectūs, ruled.

FUT. | rēgendūs, to be ruled.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

## THIRD CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Dūcō, ēre, duxī, ductūm, | <i>to lead.</i>         |
| Rēgō, ēre, rexī, rēctūm, | <i>to rule, govern.</i> |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rego, regēbam, regam. 2. Regīmus, regebāmus, regēmus. 3. Regītis, regis. 4. Regēbas, regebātis. 5. Regēbant, regēbat. 6. Reget, regent. 7. Rexērunt, rexit. 8. Rexi, rexeram, rexero. 9. Rexīmus, rexerāmus, rexerīmus. 10. Regas, regeres, rexeris, rexisses. 11. Regātis, regerētis, rexerītis, rexissētis. 12. Regam, regāmus. 13. Regeremus, regērem. 14. Rexerit, rexerint. 15. Rexissent, rexisset. 16. Rege, regite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will rule. 6. You have led, you have ruled. 7. He had led, he had ruled. 8. They had led, they had ruled. 9. He will have led, he will have ruled. 10. They may lead, they may rule. 11. He would lead, he would rule. 12. They would lead, they would rule. 13. We should have led, we should have ruled.



FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS — ACTIVE  
VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                             |                      |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| Dicō, dicēre, dixi, dictum, | to say, tell, speak. |
| Vocō, arē, avi, atum,       | to call.             |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocat, tacet, dicit.<sup>1</sup> 2. Vocant, tacent, dicunt. 3. Vocābant, tacebant, dicēbant. 4. Vocābo, tacēbo, dicam. 5. Vocāvīmus, tacuīmus, dixīmus. 6. Vocāvi, tacui, dixi. 7. Vocavērunt, tacuērunt, dixērunt. 8. Vocavērat, tacuērat, dixērat. 9. Vocavērint, tacuērint, dixērint. 10. Vocem, taceam, dicam. 11. Vocārent, tacērent, dicērent. 12. Vocāte, tacēte, dicite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I invite, I admonish, I lead. 2. We call, we are silent, we speak. 3. We were inviting, we were admonishing, we were leading. 4. I shall call, I shall be silent, I shall speak. 5. He has invited, he has been silent, he has led. 6. He had praised, he had obeyed, he had ruled. 7. They had blamed, they had advised, they had spoken. 8. He may call, he may admonish, he may rule.

---

<sup>1</sup> In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the three Conjugations here represented, — the First, the Second, and the Third, — and should carefully observe the difference between them. The advantages of such a course are twofold: first, it teaches the pupil to distinguish the several Conjugations from each other, which is one of the most important lessons to be learned in the study of the language; and, secondly, it tends to form in him, thus early, the habit of close and accurate observation, the habit of marking differences and of tracing resemblances in kindred forms, which is of vital importance in the whole course of classical study.

## THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

## OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

## EXERCISE XXXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| Anīmūs, i, m.                              | mind, passion.         |
| Bēnē, adv.                                 | well.                  |
| Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, f.                  | eclipse.               |
| Disertē, adv.                              | clearly, eloquently.   |
| Edūcō, edūcērē, eduxī, ēductū,             | to lead forth.         |
| Indicō, indicērē, indixī, indictū,         | to declare.            |
| Lātinē, adv.                               | in Latin.              |
| Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixī, praedictū, | to predict, foretell.  |
| Sāpientēr, adv.                            | wisely.                |
| Thālēs, is, m.                             | Thales, a philosopher. |
| Tullūs, i, m.                              | Tullus, a Roman name.  |
| Vērū, i, n.                                | truth.                 |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Bene dixisti. 2. Nonne Cicēro in senātu dixērat?  
 3. Cicēro diserte dicebat. 4. Oratōres diserte dicent. 5.  
 Philosōphus sapienter dixit. 6. Philosōphi sapienter dixē-  
 rant. 7. Oratōres Latīne dixērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnes  
 eduxit. 9. Hannībal exercītum in Italiā duxit. 10. Quis  
 bellum indixit? 11. Tullus bellum indixit. 12. Thales  
 defectiōnem solis praedixit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who will speak the truth? 2. Have we not spoken  
 the truth? 3. You have spoken the truth. 4. Will not  
 the general lead forth the army? 5. He has led forth the  
 army. 6. Do you not govern your mind? 7. We govern  
 our minds. 8. Did you predict this war? 9. We did not  
 predict the war. 10. Who has declared war? 11. The  
 Romans have declared war.

THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Regor, regēbar, regar. 2. Regīmur, regebāmur, regēmur. 3. Regar, regāmur. 4. Regerētur, regerentur. 5. Rectus est, rectus erat, rectus erit. 6. Recti sunt, recti erant, recti erunt. 7. Regit, regitur. 8. Regunt, reguntur. 9. Regēbat, regebātur. 10. Regebant, regebantur. 11. Reget, regetur. 12. Regent, regentur. 13. Regīmus, regimur. 14. Regebāmus, regebāmur. 15. Regēmus, regēmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is ruled, they are ruled. 2. I am ruled, I am led. 3. We are ruled, we are led. 4. He was ruled, they were ruled. 5. He will be ruled, they will be ruled. 6. We have been ruled, we have been led. 7. I lead, I am led. 8. We lead, we are led. 9. We were ruling, we were ruled. 10. He was leading, he was led. 11. They may rule, they may be ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—

PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocor, moneor, ducor. 2. Vocāmur, monēmur, ducimur. 3. Vocātur, monētur, ducitur. 4. Vocabātur, monebātur, ducebātur. 5. Vocabantur, monebantur, ducebantur. 6. Vocantur, monebuntur, ducentur. 7. Vocā-

tus es, monitus es, ductus es. 8. Vocāti estis, monīti estis, ducti estis. 9. Vocātus eram, monītus eram, ductus eram. 10. Vocātus erit, monītus erit, ductus erit.

## II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is invited, he is admonished, he is led. 2. We were called, we were advised, we were ruled. 3. He will be called, he will be advised, he will be ruled. 4. He may be invited, he may be admonished, he may be led. 5. He has been called, he has been advised, he has been led. 6. They have been called, they have been advised, they have been led.

## THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

### EXERCISE XL.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

|               |                      |
|---------------|----------------------|
| Mundūs, i, m. | <i>world.</i>        |
| Semper, adv.  | <i>always, ever.</i> |
| Vērūm, i, n.  | <i>truth.</i>        |

#### II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mundus regitur. 2. Omnis hic mundus semper rectus est. 3. Hic mundus semper regetur. 4. Haec civitas bene regitur. 5. Hae civitates bene reguntur. 6. Civitates rectae sunt. 7. Anīmus regatur. 8. Exercitus in Italiam ductus est. 9. Multi exercitus in Italiam ducti erant. 10. Bellum indictum<sup>1</sup> erat. 11. Multa bella indicta<sup>1</sup> sunt.

#### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the army led forth? 2. The army was led forth. 3. Has not this state been well governed? 4. This

<sup>1</sup> Why *indictum* in one example, and *indicta* in the other? Why not rather *indictus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

state has been well governed. 5. Will not the truth be spoken? 6. The truth has been spoken. 7. Let<sup>1</sup> the truth always be spoken. 8. Would not war have been declared? 9. War would have been declared.

## FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

#### EXERCISE XLI.

##### I. Vocabulary.

|                         |                                |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Gallūs, i, m.           | <i>Gallus</i> , a proper name. |
| Hirundō, hirundīnis, f. | <i>swallow</i> .               |
| Lūnā, ae, f.            | <i>moon</i> .                  |
| Nuntiō, āre, āvi, ātūm, | <i>to proclaim, announce</i> . |
| Sensūs, ūs, m.          | <i>feeling, perception</i> .   |
| Supplicium, ii, n.      | <i>punishment</i> .            |

##### II. Translate into English.

1. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiant. 2. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiavērant. 3. Discipūli laudabuntur. 4. Gallus defectiōnes solis praedixit. 5. Defectiōnes lunae praedixit. 6. Defectiōnes lunae praedicuntur. 7. Omne animal sensus habet. 8. Puēri tacēbant.

##### III. Translate into Latin.

1. This boy has not observed the law. 2. Good citizens will observe the laws. 3. Let the laws be observed. 4. Who has your book? 5. That boy has my book. 6. You shall have my book. 7. What did you say? 8. I spoke the truth. 9. The truth would have been spoken.

---

<sup>1</sup> Let be spoken, render by the Latin Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind. | Supine.  |
|------------|------------|------------|----------|
| audiō,     | audire,    | audivi,    | audītum. |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I hear.*

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL.  |
|-----------|----------|
| audiō     | audimūs  |
| audis     | auditis  |
| audit;    | audiunt. |

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing.*

|           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| audiebām  | audiebāmūs |
| audiebās  | audiebātis |
| audiebāt; | audiebant. |

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will hear.*

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| audiām  | audiēmūs |
| audies  | audietis |
| audiet; | audient. |

## PERFECT.

*I heard or have heard:*

|           |                            |
|-----------|----------------------------|
| audivi    | audivimūs                  |
| audivisti | audivistis                 |
| audivit;  | audiverunt, or <i>ērō.</i> |

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard.*

|            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| audiverām  | audiverāmūs |
| audiverās  | audiverātis |
| audiverāt; | audiverant. |

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have heard.*

|            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| audiverō   | audiverimūs |
| audiveris  | audiveritis |
| audiverit; | audiverint. |

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can hear.*

SINGULAR.

audiām  
audiās  
audiāt;

PLURAL.

audiāmūs  
audiātis  
audiant.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*

audirēm  
audirēs  
audirēt;

audirēmūs  
audirētis  
audirent.

PERFECT.

*I may have heard.*

audivērim  
audivēris  
audivērit;

audivērimūs  
audivēritis  
audivērint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*

audivissēm  
audivissēs  
audivissēt;

audivissēmūs  
audivissētis  
audivissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi, *hear thou;*

auditē, *hear ye.*

FUT. auditō, *thou shalt hear,*  
auditō, *he shall hear;*

auditōtē, *ye shall hear,*  
audiuntō, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audirē, *to hear.*

PRES. audiens, *hearing.*

PERF. audivissē, *to have heard.*

FUT. auditūrus essē, *to be*  
*about to hear.*

FUT. auditūrus, *about to hear.*

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. audiendi, *of hearing.*

Dat. audiendō, *for hearing.*

Acc. audiendū, *hearing.*

Abl. audiendō, *by hearing.*

Acc. auditū, *to hear.*

Abl. auditū, *to hear, be heard.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

|            |            |              |
|------------|------------|--------------|
| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind.   |
| audiōr,    | audiri,    | audītūs sūm. |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am heard.*

| SINGULAR.      | PLURAL.    |
|----------------|------------|
| audiōr         | audimūr    |
| audiris, or rē | audimini   |
| auditūr;       | audiuntūr. |

## IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*

|                   |              |
|-------------------|--------------|
| audiebār          | audiebāmūr   |
| audiebaris, or rē | audiebāmini  |
| audiebātūr;       | audiebantūr. |

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.*

|                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| audiār          | audiēmūr   |
| audieris, or rē | audiemini  |
| audiētūr;       | audientūr. |

## PERFECT.

*I have been heard.*

|                          |              |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| auditūs sūm <sup>1</sup> | auditi sūmūs |
| auditūs es               | auditi estis |
| auditūs est;             | auditi sunt. |

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*

|                           |               |
|---------------------------|---------------|
| auditūs ērām <sup>1</sup> | auditi ērāmūs |
| auditūs ēras              | auditi ērātis |
| auditūs ērāt;             | auditi ērant. |

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*

|                          |               |
|--------------------------|---------------|
| auditūs ērō <sup>1</sup> | auditi ērimūs |
| auditūs ēris             | auditi ēritis |
| auditūs ērit;            | auditi ērant. |

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.



SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be heard.*

| SINGULAR.       | PLURAL.    |
|-----------------|------------|
| audiār          | audiāmūr   |
| audiāris, or rē | audiāmīni  |
| audiātūr;       | audiantūr. |

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

|                  |             |
|------------------|-------------|
| audirēr          | audirēmūr   |
| audirēris, or rē | audirēmīni  |
| audirētūr;       | audirentūr. |

PERFECT.

*I may have been heard.*

|                          |              |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| auditūs sīm <sup>1</sup> | auditī sīmūs |
| auditūs sīs              | auditī sitīs |
| auditūs sīt;             | auditī sint. |

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

|                            |                |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| auditūs essēm <sup>1</sup> | auditī essēmūs |
| auditūs essēs              | auditī essētīs |
| auditūs essēt;             | auditī essent. |

IMPERATIVE.

|   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| PRES. audirē, be thou heard;                                      | audimīni, be ye heard.          |
| FUT. auditōr, thou shalt be heard,<br>auditōr, he shall be heard; | audiuntōr, they shall be heard. |

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

|  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| PRES. audirī, to be heard.                 | PERF. auditūs, heard.        |
| PERF. auditūs essē, to have been heard.    | FUT. audiendūs, to be heard. |
| FUT. auditūm irī, to be about to be heard. |                              |

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XLII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                           |                                      |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Custodiō, irē, ivi, itūm. | <i>to guard.</i>                     |
| Dormiō, irē, ivi, itūm.   | <i>to sleep.</i>                     |
| Erūdiō, irē, ivi, itūm.   | <i>to instruct, refine, educate.</i> |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Audis, audiebās, audies. 2. Auditis, audiebātis, audietis. 3. Audio, audimus. 4. Audiebam, audiebāmus. 5. Audiam, audiemus. 6. Audivimus, audiverāmus, audiverimus. 7. Audivi, audiveram, audivēro. 8. Audivit, audiverant. 9. Audiam, audirem, audiverim, audivissem. 10. Audiāmus, audirēmus, audiverimus, audivissēmus. 11. Audito, auditōte.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I hear, I guard. 2. We hear, we guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. We have slept, you have heard. 7. I had heard, I had guarded. 8. He may hear, they may sleep. 9. They may hear, he may sleep. 10. He might hear, they might sleep. 11. He might sleep, they might hear.

## FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XLIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitat, admōnet, ducit, custōdit. 2. Invitant, admōnent, ducunt, custodiunt. 3. Invitābant, admōnebānt, du-

cēbant, custodiēbant. 4. Invitābat, admonēbat, ducēbat, custodiēbat. 5. Invitavēram, admonuēram, duxēram, audivēram. 6. Invitaverāmus, admonuerāmus, duxerāmus, audiverāmus. 7. Invitavērim, admonuērim, duxērim, custodivērim. 8. Invitavērunt, admonuērunt, duxērunt, audivērunt.

## II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We invite, we admonish, we lead, we instruct. 2. I was inviting, I was admonishing, I was leading, I was instructing. 3. We were praising, we were obeying, we were speaking, we were instructing. 4. He will blame, he will advise, he will speak, he will instruct. 5. I have invited, you have obeyed, he has led, they have guarded.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

### OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

### EXERCISE XLIV.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

|                            |                                       |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Arctē, <i>adv.</i>         | <i>closely, soundly.</i>              |
| Mūniō, irē, ivi, itūm,     | <i>to fortify.</i>                    |
| Sermō, sermōnis, <i>m.</i> | <i>discourse, conversation.</i>       |
| Thrāsýbūlus, i, <i>m.</i>  | <i>Thrasybulus, Athenian general.</i> |

#### II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives urbem custodiēbant. 2. Urbem custodiēmus. 3. Milites templum custodiunt. 4. Verum auditis. 5. Verum audite. 6. Verum audiverāmus. 7. Verba tua audimus. 8. Verba mea audivisti. 9. Oratiōnem tuam audivi. 10. Sermōnem audiēbam. 11. Puēri arcte dormiunt. 12. Puēri cantum luscinae audiēbant. 13. Thrasybūlus urbem munivit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not hear us? 2. We hear you. 3. Who heard the oration? 4. We heard the oration. 5. The pupils heard the conversation. 6. They did not hear your oration. 7. The citizens are fortifying the city. 8. Who will guard this beautiful city? 9. The brave soldiers will guard the city. 10. Will you guard the temple? 11. We will guard the temple.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XLV.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Audīmur, audiebāmur, audiēmur. 2. Audiātur, audiuntur. 3. Audīrer, audirēmur. 4. Audītus sum, audītī sumus. 5. Audītī erāmus, auditus eram. 6. Auditus erit, audītī erunt. 7. Audit, auditur. 8. Audiunt, audiuntur. 9. Audiet, audiētur. 10. Audīrem, audirer. 11. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 12. Audiēbat, audiebātur. 13. Audivit, auditus est. 14. Audivērat, auditus erat.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am instructed, we are instructed. 2. He will be instructed, they will be instructed. 3. They have been heard, they have been instructed. 4. They had been heard, he had been instructed. 5. He was instructing, he was instructed. 6. They are instructing, they are instructed. 7. We have heard, you have been heard. 8. You have instructed, we have been instructed. 9. I have heard, you have been heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH - CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLVI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitāris, admonēris, educēris, custodiris. 2. Invitantur, admonentur, educuntur, custodiuntur. 3. Invitātur, admonētur, educitur, custoditur. 4. Invitabitur, admonebitur, educetur, custodiētur. 5. Invitabātur, admonebātur, educebātur, custodiebātur. 6. Invitātus sum, admonītus sum, eductus sum, custoditus sum. 7. Invitāti erant, admonīti erant, educti erant, custodīti erant. 8. Invitāti essēmus, educti essēmus. 9. Admonītus esses, custoditus esses.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is called, he is terrified, he is led forth, he is guarded. 2. They are called, they are terrified, they are led forth, they are guarded. 3. They will be loved, they will be advised, they will be led, they will be heard. 4. I have been blamed, I have been admonished, you had been ruled, you had been guarded. 5. You had been blamed, I had been admonished. 6. You have been ruled, I have been guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Bellūm, i, n.

war.

Bēignē, adv.

kindly.

Civilis, ē.

civil.

|                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Egrēgiē, <i>adv.</i>           | <i>excellently.</i>                 |
| Filiūs, <i>ii, m.</i>          | <i>son.</i>                         |
| Finīō, <i>irē, ivī, itūm,</i>  | <i>to finish, bring to a close.</i> |
| Lēgatiō, <i>lēgatiōnis, f.</i> | <i>embassy.</i>                     |
| Vox, <i>vōcis, f.</i>          | <i>voice.</i>                       |

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vox audita<sup>1</sup> est. 2. Voces audiuntur. 3. Cantus lusciniæ auditur. 4. Cantus lusciniarum audiētur. 5. Urbs munita erat. 6. Urbes munientur. 7. Templum custodiētur. 8. Tempa custodiuntur. 9. Legatio benigne audita est. 10. Haec legatio benigne audiētur. 11. Verba tua benigne audientur. 12. Filii regis egregie erudiuntur. 13. Bellum civile finitum<sup>1</sup> est.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the orator heard? 2. The renowned orator was kindly heard. 3. Let the city be fortified.<sup>2</sup> 4. Let the temples be guarded. 5. The city has been fortified. 6. The temples will be guarded. 7. Let the war be brought to a close. 8. Let the boys be instructed. 9. Let the words of the instructor be heard.

## FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

### EXERCISE XLVIII.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

|                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Athēniēnsis, <i>is, m. and f.</i>   | <i>an Athenian.</i>            |
| Cānis, <i>cānis, m. and f.</i>      | <i>dog.</i>                    |
| Cōlō, <i>cōlēre, cōlui, cultūm,</i> | <i>to practise, cultivate.</i> |
| Cūm, <i>prep. with abl.</i>         | <i>with.</i>                   |

<sup>1</sup> Why *audita* and *finitum*, instead of *auditus* and *finitus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

<sup>2</sup> *Let be fortified* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

|                                  |                       |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Firmō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,           | <i>to strengthen.</i> |
| Grex, grēgīs, <i>m.</i>          | <i>herd, flock.</i>   |
| Illustrō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,        | <i>to illumine.</i>   |
| Jungō, jungērē, junxi, junctūm,  | <i>to join.</i>       |
| Lābōr, lābōris, <i>m.</i>        | <i>labor.</i>         |
| Mōdestiā, <i>ae, f.</i>          | <i>modesty.</i>       |
| Ovis, ōvis, <i>f.</i>            | <i>sheep.</i>         |
| Portūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>            | <i>port, harbor.</i>  |
| Prūdentiā, <i>ae, f.</i>         | <i>prudence.</i>      |
| Terrā, <i>ae, f.</i>             | <i>earth.</i>         |
| Vālētūdō, vālētūdīnīs, <i>f.</i> | <i>health.</i>        |
| Vāriētās, vāriētātīs, <i>f.</i>  | <i>variety.</i>       |
| Viōlō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,           | <i>violate.</i>       |

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sol terram illustrat. 2. Modestia puēros ornat. 3. Discipūli memoriā exercēt. 4. Discipūli tui memoriā exercēbant. 5. Canes gregem custodiēbant. 6. Greges ovium custodiuntur. 7. Praeceptōres juventūtem erudient. 8. Labor valetūdīnem tuā firmābit. 9. Variētās nos delectat. 10. Athenienses portum munivērunt. 11. Philosophia nos erudīvit.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Good men love virtue. 2. Virtue will always<sup>1</sup> be loved. 3. Let virtue be always practised. 4. We will always practise virtue. 5. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 6. They will be punished. 7. Will you instruct these boys? 8. We will instruct good boys. 9. Who<sup>2</sup> led this army into Italy? 10. Hannibal led the army into Italy.

<sup>1</sup> For the syntax of adverbs, and for their place in the Latin sentence, see Rule LI. and note 4, p. 72.

<sup>2</sup> Which form of the Interrogative should be used, *quis* or *quī*? See 188.

## VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. *Verbs in io* are generally of the fourth conjugation; and even the few which are of the third are inflected with the endings of the fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels, as follows:

## ACTIVE VOICE.

214. *Capio, I take.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind. | Supine. |
|------------|------------|------------|---------|
| cāpiō,     | cāpĕrĕ,    | cēpĭ,      | captūm. |

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

| SINGULAR.                 | PLURAL.                          |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| cāpiō, cāpis, cāpit;      | cāpimūs, cāpitūs, cāpiunt.       |
| IMPERFECT.                |                                  |
| cāpiēbām, -iēbās, -iēbāt; | cāpiēbāmūs, -iēbātūs, -iēbant.   |
| FUTURE.                   |                                  |
| cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt;       | cāpiēmūs, -iētūs, -ient.         |
| PERFECT.                  |                                  |
| cēpĭ, -istī, -it;         | cēpimūs, -istūs, -erunt, or ērē. |
| PLUPERFECT.               |                                  |
| cēpĕrām, -ērās, -ērāt;    | cēpĕrāmūs, -ērātūs, -erant.      |
| FUTURE PERFECT.           |                                  |
| cēpĕrō, -eris, -erit;     | cēpĕrimūs, -eritūs, -erint.      |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

|                           |                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| cāpiām, -iās, -iāt;       | cāpiāmūs, -iātūs, -iant.       |
| IMPERFECT.                |                                |
| cāpĕrēm, -ērēs, -ērēt;    | cāpĕrēmūs, -ērētūs, -erent.    |
| PERFECT.                  |                                |
| cēpĕrim, -eris, -erit;    | cēpĕrimūs, -eritūs, -erint.    |
| PLUPERFECT.               |                                |
| cēpiſſēm, -iſſēs, -iſſēt; | cēpiſſēmūs, -iſſētūs, -issent. |



IMPERATIVE.

| SINGULAR.           |  | PLURAL.        |  |
|---------------------|--|----------------|--|
| PRES. cāpē;         |  | cāpītē.        |  |
| FUT. cāpītō,        |  | cāpītōte,      |  |
| cāpītō;             |  | cāpiuntō.      |  |
| INFINITIVE.         |  | PARTICIPLE.    |  |
| PRES. cāpērē.       |  | PRES. cāpiens. |  |
| PERF. cēpissē.      |  |                |  |
| FUT. captūrus essē. |  | FUT. captūrus. |  |
| GERUND.             |  | SUPINE.        |  |
| Gen. cāpiendī.      |  |                |  |
| Dat. cāpiendō.      |  |                |  |
| Acc. cāpiendū.      |  | Acc. captū.    |  |
| Abl. cāpiendō.      |  | Abl. captū.    |  |

PASSIVE VOICE.

215. Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| Pres. Ind. | Pres. Inf. | Perf. Ind.  |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| cāpiōr,    | cāpī,      | captūs sūm. |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

| SINGULAR.       |                     | PLURAL.       |                       |
|-----------------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| cāpiōr,         | cāpērīs, cāpītūr;   | cāpīmūr,      | cāpīmīnī, cāpiuntūr.  |
| IMPERFECT.      |                     |               |                       |
| cāpiēbār,       | -iēbārīs, -iēbātūr; | cāpiēbāmūr,   | -iēbāmīnī, -iēbantūr. |
| FUTURE.         |                     |               |                       |
| cāpiār,         | -iērīs, -iētūr;     | cāpiēmūr,     | -iēmīnī, -ientur.     |
| PERFECT.        |                     |               |                       |
| captūs sūm,     | ēs, est;            | captī sūmūs,  | estīs, sunt.          |
| PLUPERFECT.     |                     |               |                       |
| captūs ērām,    | ērās, ērāt;         | captī ērāmūs, | ērātīs, ērant.        |
| FUTURE PERFECT. |                     |               |                       |
| captūs ērō,     | ērīs, ērit;         | captī ērimūs, | ērītīs, ērunt.        |

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

| PRESENT.                    |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| SINGULAR.                   | PLURAL.                         |
| căpiār, -iārīs, -iātūr;     | căpiāmūr, -iāmīnī, -iantūr.     |
| IMPERFECT.                  |                                 |
| căpērēr, -ērērīs, -ērētūr;  | căpērēmūr, -ērēmīnī, -erentūr.  |
| PERFECT.                    |                                 |
| captūs sīm, sis, sīt;       | captī sīmūs, sītīs, sint.       |
| PLUPERFECT.                 |                                 |
| captūs essēm, essēs, essēt; | captī essēmūs, essētīs, essent. |

## IMPERATIVE.

|                             |            |
|-----------------------------|------------|
| PRES. căpērē;               | căpīmīnī.  |
| FUT. căpiūtūr,<br>căpiūtūr; | căpiuntūr. |

## INFINITIVE.

|                    |
|--------------------|
| PRES. căpi.        |
| PERF. captūs essē. |
| FUT. captūm irī.   |

## PARTICIPLE.

|                              |
|------------------------------|
| PERF. captūs.                |
| FUT. căpiendūs. <sup>1</sup> |

## EXERCISE XLIX.

## I. Vocabulary.

|                                      |                                  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| A, ab, <i>prep. with abl.</i>        | <i>from, by.</i>                 |
| Accipiō, accipērē, accēpi, acceptūm, | <i>to receive.</i>               |
| Bellūm, ī, n.                        | <i>war.</i>                      |
| Căpiō, căpērē, cēpi, captūm,         | <i>to take, capture.</i>         |
| Carthāgō, Carthāgīnīs, f.            | <i>Carthage, city in Africa.</i> |
| Cornēliūs, īi, m.                    | <i>Cornelius, a proper name.</i> |
| Gallūs, ī, m.                        | <i>Gaul, a Gaul.<sup>2</sup></i> |

<sup>1</sup> The pupil will observe that the conjugation of *Capio* is somewhat peculiar, combining certain characteristics of the *Fourth Conjugation* with others of the *Third*. He should now carefully compare it with the conjugation of *Rego* and with that of *Audio*, and note with accuracy both the differences and the resemblances.

<sup>2</sup> The Gauls were a people inhabiting the country of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.

|                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Jăciō, jăcērē, jēcī, jactūm, | <i>to cast, throw, hurl.</i>     |
| Lăpīs, lapīdis, <i>m.</i>    | <i>stone.</i>                    |
| Lux, lūcis, <i>f.</i>        | <i>light.</i>                    |
| Mūrūs, ī, <i>m.</i>          | <i>wall.</i>                     |
| Publius, ii, <i>m.</i>       | <i>Publius, a proper name.</i>   |
| Rēgūlūs, ī, <i>m.</i>        | <i>Regulus, Roman general.</i>   |
| Tēlūm, ī, <i>n.</i>          | <i>javelin.</i>                  |
| Trōjā, ae, <i>f.</i>         | <i>Troy, city in Asia Minor.</i> |

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Graeci Trojam capiēbant. 2. Trojam cepērunt. 3. Troja capta<sup>1</sup> est. 4. Troja capta erat. 5. Regūlus ipse captus est. 6. Belli duces capientur. 7. Haec urbs capiētur. 8. Illam urbem capiēmus. 9. Roma a Gallis<sup>2</sup> capta erat. 10. Galli Romam cepērant. 11. Scipio multas civitātes cepit. 12. Luna lucem a sole accipit. 13. Lucem a sole accipimus. 14. Tuam<sup>3</sup> epistolam accēpi. 15. Milites tela jaciēbant.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We were taking the city. 2. The city will be taken. 3. The city has-been taken. 4. The cities will be taken. 5. The cities have been taken. 6. Who<sup>4</sup> took Carthage? 7. Publius Cornelius Scipio took Carthage. 8. Have you not<sup>5</sup> received my letter? 9. I have received your letter. 10. Have you not received five letters? 11. We have received ten letters.

---

<sup>1</sup> For the agreement of the participle in the compound tenses with the subject, see Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XXXII., page 24.

<sup>3</sup> What is the usual place of the Possessive Pronoun? See page 77, note 1. In this sentence, *tuam* precedes its noun because it is emphatic.

<sup>4</sup> Which form of the Interrogative Pronoun should be used, *quis* or *qui*? See 188.

<sup>5</sup> Which Interrogative Particle should be used? See 346, II. 1, page 59.

## PART THIRD.

## S Y N T A X.

## CHAPTER I.

## SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

## SECTION I.

## CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

*Deus mundum aedificāvit*, *God made the world.* Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts, so related that one is dependent upon the other:

*Dōnec ēris felix, multos nūmērābis āmicos*; *So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends.* Ovid.

1. CLAUSES. — In this example, two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous*," and (2) "*You will number many friends*," are so united that the first only specifies the time of the second: *You will number many friends, (when?) so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

*Sol ruit, et montes umbrantur*, *The sun descends, and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

*Miltiādes accūsātus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.*

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

*Quis non paupertātem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty? Cic.*

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne*, Is he writing ? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing ?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit*, Is he writing ?

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

*Iustitiam cōle, Cultivate justice. Cic.*

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

*Rēliquit quos viros, What heroes he has left! Cic.*

## SECTION II.

### SIMPLE SENTENCES.

#### ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

*Cluilius mōritur, Cluilius dies. Liv.*

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *mōritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, moritur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and in *his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

**349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.** — The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

**350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX.** — The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.<sup>1</sup>

#### SIMPLE SUBJECT.

**351.** The subject of a sentence must be a noun, or some word or words used as a noun:

*Rex*<sup>2</sup> decrevit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego*<sup>3</sup> ad te scribo, *I write to you.* Cic.

#### SIMPLE PREDICATE.

**353.** The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

*Miltiades est accusatus*,<sup>3</sup> *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. *Tu es testis*, *You are a witness.* Cic. *Fortuna caeca est*, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Thus, in the example given above, the simple subject is *Cluilius*; the complex, *Cluilius, Albānus rex*; the simple predicate, *moritur*; the complex, *in his castris moritur*.

<sup>2</sup> In these examples, the noun *rex* and the pronoun *ego*, used as a noun, are the subjects.

<sup>3</sup> In the first of these examples, the predicate is the verb, *est accusatus*; in the second, the noun and copula, *est testis*; and in the third, the adjective and copula, *caeca est*.

<sup>4</sup> Thus *testis*, in the second example, is a *Predicate Noun*, and *caeca*, in the third, is a *Predicate Adjective*.

## CHAPTER II.

### SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

#### SECTION I.

#### AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

#### RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.<sup>1</sup>

362. A Predicate Noun<sup>2</sup> denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,<sup>2</sup> *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est declaratus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

#### EXERCISE L.

#### I. Vocabulary.

|                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Amnis, amnis, <i>m.</i>           | <i>river.</i>                      |
| Creō, arē, avi, atum,             | <i>to create, make, elect.</i>     |
| Graeciā, ae, <i>f.</i>            | <i>Greece.</i>                     |
| Impērātōr, impērātōris, <i>m.</i> | <i>commander.</i>                  |
| Lātinus, i, <i>m.</i>             | <i>Latinus, Italian king.</i>      |
| Lāviniā, ae, <i>f.</i>            | <i>Lavinia, a proper name.</i>     |
| Mālūm, i, <i>n.</i>               | <i>evil.</i>                       |
| Nōmīnō, arē, avi, atum,           | <i>to call, name.</i>              |
| Nūmā, ae, <i>m.</i>               | <i>Numa, Roman king.</i>           |
| Rhēnūs, i, <i>m.</i>              | <i>the Rhine, river in Europe.</i> |
| Serviūs, ii, <i>m.</i>            | <i>Servius, Roman king.</i>        |
| Stultitiā, ae, <i>f.</i>          | <i>folly.</i>                      |
| Tūm, <i>adv.</i>                  | <i>then, at that time.</i>         |

<sup>1</sup> In illustrating in the subsequent pages the leading principles of the Latin Syntax, we shall take up the most common Rules in the order in which they stand in the Grammar. In doing so, we shall repeat in their proper places those Rules which we have had occasion to anticipate in the previous Exercises.

<sup>2</sup> See 353, 1; also Rule I. note, p. 59.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro *consul*<sup>1</sup> fuit.<sup>2</sup> 2. Cicĕro *orĕtor* fuit. 3. Cicĕro tum<sup>3</sup> erat<sup>2</sup> *orĕtor* clarissĭmus.<sup>4</sup> 4. Puer *orĕtor* erit. 5. Numa erat rex. 6. Numa rex<sup>1</sup> creĕtus est. 7. Cato imperĕtor fuit. 8. Cato magnus imperĕtor fuit. 9. Scipio consul creĕtus est. 10. Scipio consul fuĕrat. 11. Stultitia est malum. 12. Gloria est fructus virtutis. 13. Graecia artium<sup>5</sup> mater nominĕtur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Rhine is a large *river*. 2. Rome was a beautiful *city*. 3. Cato was a wise *man*. 4. Your father is a wise man. 5. Lavinia was the daughter of the king. 6. Latinus was king. 7. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 8. Tullia was the daughter of Servius.

## APPOSITIVES.

## RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive<sup>6</sup> agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex<sup>6</sup> mŏritur, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv. Urbes Carthĕgo<sup>6</sup> atque Nŭmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia*. Cic.

<sup>1</sup> Predicate Noun. See Rule I. For Model for parsing Predicate Nouns, see p. 59.

<sup>2</sup> For the *place* of the verb with Predicate Nouns, see note on *fuit* under Exercise XIX.

<sup>3</sup> Adverb qualifying *erat*. See Rule LI. p. 72.

<sup>4</sup> See 162; also Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

<sup>5</sup> *Artium* depends upon *mater*. See Rule XVI. p. 22.

<sup>6</sup> See 363, note, p. 15; also Model, p. 16. *Rex*, *Carthĕgo*, and *Nu-  
mantia* are all Predicate Nouns.



## EXERCISE LI.

## I. Vocabulary.

|                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Alexandĕr, Alexandri, <i>m.</i>    | <i>Alexander, the Great.</i>        |
| Conjux, conjūgis, <i>m. and f.</i> | <i>wife, husband.</i>               |
| Epirūs, <i>i, f.</i>               | <i>Epirus, country in Greece.</i>   |
| Erūdītūs, ū, ūm,                   | <i>learned, instructed in.</i>      |
| Hannō, Hannōnis, <i>m.</i>         | <i>Hanno, Carthaginian general.</i> |
| Justūs, ū, ūm,                     | <i>just, upright.</i>               |
| Mācēdōniā, <i>ae, f.</i>           | <i>Macedonia, Macedon.</i>          |
| Nēpōs, nēpōtis, <i>m.</i>          | <i>grandson.</i>                    |
| Paulūs, <i>i, m.</i>               | <i>Paulus, Roman consul.</i>        |
| Philippūs, <i>i, m.</i>            | <i>Philip, king of Macedon.</i>     |
| Pyrrhūs, <i>i, m.</i>              | <i>Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.</i>     |
| Vulnĕrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,           | <i>to wound.</i>                    |

## II. Translate into English.

1. Cicĕro, eruditissĭmus homo,<sup>1</sup> consul<sup>2</sup> fuit. 2. Numa, justissĭmus vir, erat rex. 3. Ancus, Numae nepos,<sup>1</sup> rex fuit. 4. Hanno dux captus est.<sup>3</sup> 5. Pyrrhus, Epiri rex, vulneratus est. 6. Philippus, rex Macedoniae, Athenienses superavit. 7. Paulus consul<sup>1</sup> regem superavit. 8. Philosophia, mater bonarum artium, nos erudit.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Tullia, the daughter<sup>1</sup> of Servius, was the wife<sup>2</sup> of Tarquin. 2. Servius, the father of Tullia, was a king. 3. Scipio, the leader of the Romans, took Carthage. 4. Scipio the general was praised. 5. Philip, king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander. 6. Alexander, the son of Philip, was king of Macedonia.

---

<sup>1</sup> Appositive. See Rule II. For Model for parsing Appositives, see p. 16.

<sup>2</sup> Predicate Noun. See Rule I.

<sup>3</sup> See 214.

## SECTION II.

## NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES. — Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| I. Nominative,   | Case of the Subject.                      |
| II. Vocative,    | Case of Address.                          |
| III. Accusative, | Case of Direct Object.                    |
| IV. Dative,      | Case of Indirect Object.                  |
| V. Genitive,     | Case of Adjective Relations.              |
| VI. Ablative,    | Case of Adverbial Relations. <sup>1</sup> |

## RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative :

*Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned.* Liv. *Pātent portae, The gates are open.* Cic. *Rex vicit, The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

*Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. — See 460, 2, p. 54.

## EXERCISE LII.

## I. Vocabulary.

|                                 |                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Libertās, libertātis, f.</i> | <i>liberty.</i>       |
| <i>Opulentūs, ō, ūm,</i>        | <i>rich, opulent.</i> |
| <i>Quōtidie, adv.</i>           | <i>daily.</i>         |
| <i>Vitiūm, ii, n.</i>           | <i>fault, vice.</i>   |
| <i>Oppidum, i, n.</i>           | <i>town, city.</i>    |

---

<sup>1</sup> This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because it is thought it will best present the force of the several cases, and their relation to each other.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Italia*<sup>1</sup> liberāta<sup>2</sup> est. 2. *Urbs* Roma liberāta erat. 3. Haec *urbs* clarissīma liberabitur. 4. Haec *urbs* opulentissīma est capta. 5. Virtus quotidie laudātur. 6. Virtutes semper laudabuntur. 7. Sapientia semper est laudāta. 8. Libertas semper laudabitur. 9. Omnia hostium oppida expugnāta sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not *Philip* wounded? 2. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, was wounded. 3. Many *soldiers* were wounded. 4. Did not the soldiers fight bravely? 5. The soldiers fought bravely. 6. Will not the laws be observed? 7. The laws have been observed. 8. They will be observed.

## SECTION III.

## VOCATIVE.

## RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative :

Perge, Laeli,<sup>3</sup> Proceed, Laelius. Cic. Quid est, Cātīlina,<sup>3</sup> Why is it, Catiline? Cic. Tuum est, Servi,<sup>3</sup> regnum. The kingdom is yours, Servius. Liv.

## EXERCISE LIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                         |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| Auditōr, auditōris, m.  | hearer, auditor.    |
| Cārūs, ā, ūm,           | dear.               |
| Jūvenis, is, m. and f.  | a youth, young man. |
| Lēgātūs, ī, m.          | ambassador.         |
| Salūtō, āre, āvi, ātūm, | to salute.          |

<sup>1</sup> Subject of *liberāta est*. See Rule III. For Model for parsing Subjects, see p. 57.

<sup>2</sup> Why *liberāta* rather than *liberātus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

<sup>3</sup> *Laeli*, *Catīlina*, and *Servi* are all in the Vocative by this Rule. *Laeli* is for *Laelie*; and *Servi*, for *Servie*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Te, *Scipio*,<sup>1</sup> salutāmus. 2. Vos, *amīci*<sup>1</sup> carissīmi,<sup>2</sup> salūto. 3. Vos, *audītōres* omnes, salutāmus. 4. Verba mea, *judices*, audīte. 5. Haec verba, legāti, audīte. 6. Vos, milītes, hanc urbem clarissīmam custodīte. 7. Milītes<sup>1</sup> fortissīmi, patriam vestram liberāte. 8. Vestram virtutem, juvēnes, laudāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Boys*,<sup>1</sup> hear the words of your father. 2. *Judges*, you shall hear the truth. 3. *Father*, have we not spoken the truth? 4. You, boys, have spoken the truth. 5. Soldiers, you have fought bravely. 6. You, brave soldiers, have saved your country. 7. Pupils, I praise your diligence.

## SECTION IV.

## ACCUSATIVE.

## RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object<sup>3</sup> of an action is put in the Accusative :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world*.<sup>4</sup> Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic*. Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendīte, *Defend the safety of the Roman people*. Cic.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the Vocative, according to Rule IV. No special Model for parsing is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different Rules are, of course, assigned for different cases. See Directions for Parsing, p. 15; also Model, p. 16.

The Vocative is not often the first word in the sentence, though it is sometimes thus placed, as in the seventh sentence in this Exercise.

<sup>2</sup> See 162.

<sup>3</sup> See note on Direct Object, p. 70.

<sup>4</sup> See note on the position of the Object in the Latin sentence, p. 70.

## EXERCISE LIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

|                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Flāminiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>         | <i>Flaminius</i> , Roman general. |
| Marcellūs, i, <i>m.</i>          | <i>Marcellus</i> , Roman general. |
| Poenūs, ā, ūm,                   | <i>Carthaginian</i> .             |
| Poenus, i, <i>m.</i>             | <i>a Carthaginian</i> .           |
| Sanctūs, ā, ūm,                  | <i>holy, sacred</i> .             |
| Siciliā, ae, <i>f.</i>           | <i>Sicily</i> , the island of.    |
| Spōliū, āre, āvi, ātūm,          | <i>to rob, spoil, despoil</i> .   |
| Syrācūsae, ārūm, <i>f. plur.</i> | <i>Syracuse</i> , city in Sicily. |

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Alexander multas *urbes*<sup>1</sup> expugnāvit. 2. Italia pulchras *urbes* habuit. 3. Hostes *templa* spoliābant. 4. *Templa* sanctissima spoliaverunt. 5. Hannibal Flaminium<sup>1</sup> consulem<sup>2</sup> superāvit. 6. Poeni Siciliam occupaverant. 7. Marcellus<sup>3</sup> magnam hujus insulae<sup>4</sup> partem cepit. 8. Marcellus Syracusas,<sup>1</sup> nobilissimam urbem,<sup>2</sup> expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not<sup>5</sup> love your *parents*?<sup>1</sup> 2. We love our *parents*. 3. You practise *virtue*. 4. Our pupils will practise *virtue*. 5. Did not Rome have beautiful temples? 6. Rome had beautiful temples. 7. Have not the enemy<sup>6</sup> taken the city? 8. They have taken the beautiful city. 9. They will plunder all the temples.

<sup>1</sup> Direct Object, in the Accusative, according to Rule V. For Model for parsing, see p. 71.

<sup>2</sup> Appositive. See Rule II. 363.

<sup>3</sup> Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

<sup>4</sup> *Hujus insulae*, of this island; i.e., of Sicily. Observe the position of the Genitive between the adjective *magnam* and its noun *partem*. See note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX. II. 10.

<sup>5</sup> See 346, II. 1.

<sup>6</sup> The Latin word must be in the plural.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

## RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME, and EXTENT OF SPACE, are expressed by the Accusative :

Römulus septem et triginta regnāvit annos,<sup>1</sup> *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *To walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōginta distāre, *To be eighty feet distant.* Cæc. Nix quattuor pēdes<sup>1</sup> alta, *Snow four feet deep.* Liv.

## EXERCISE LV.

## I. Vocabulary.

|                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Aggēr, aggēris, <i>m.</i>   | <i>mound, rampart.</i>          |
| Ambūlō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,     | <i>to walk.</i>                 |
| Centūm,                     | <i>hundred.</i>                 |
| Glādiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>      | <i>sword.</i>                   |
| Lācedæmōniūs, ii, <i>m.</i> | <i>a Lacedæmonian, Spartan.</i> |
| Lātūs, ō, ūm,               | <i>broad, wide.</i>             |
| Longūs, ō, ūm,              | <i>long.</i>                    |
| Mēsis, mēsis, <i>m.</i>     | <i>month.</i>                   |
| Nox, noctis, <i>f.</i>      | <i>night.</i>                   |
| Octōgintā,                  | <i>eighty.</i>                  |
| Pēs, pēdis, <i>m.</i>       | <i>foot.</i>                    |
| Quinquāgintā,               | <i>fifty.</i>                   |
| Regnō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,      | <i>to reign.</i>                |
| Vigilō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,     | <i>to watch, be awake.</i>      |

## II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedæmonii pacem sex annos<sup>2</sup> servavērunt. 2. Magnam noctis partem<sup>2</sup> vigilavēram. 3. Puer octo horas

<sup>1</sup> Annos denotes *Duration of Time*, while millia and pedes denote *Extent of Space*. They are all in the Accusative by this Rule.

<sup>2</sup> In the Accusative denoting *Duration of Time*. See Rule VIII. No special Model for parsing is necessary. The pupil will be guided by previous directions and Models.

dormivit. 4. *Latinus multos annos regnāvit.* 5. *In Italiā sex menses fuīmus.* 6. *In illā urbe decem dies fuīmus.* 7. *Agger octoginta pedes<sup>1</sup> latus fuit.* 8. *Hic gladius sex pedes longus est.*

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Did you not walk two *hours*? 2. We walked three *hours*. 3. Did you not sleep six *hours*? 4. We slept eight hours. 5. The soldiers guarded the city ten months. 6. Were you not in the city four months? 7. We were in the city five months. 8. The mound was fifty feet high.

## ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.

### RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative:

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum<sup>2</sup> vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquinios,<sup>2</sup> *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic.

## EXERCISE LVI.

### I. *Vocabulary.*

Athēnae, ārūm, *f. plur.*

*Athens, capital of Attica.*

Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgi, fūgītūm,

*to flee, fly, run away.*

Lūsandēr, Lūsandri, *m.*

*Lysander, Spartan general.*

Miltiādēs, *is, m.*

*Miltiades, Athenian general.*

Nāvīgō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,

*to sail, sail to.*

<sup>1</sup> In the Accusative, denoting *Extent of Space*.

<sup>2</sup> *Romam, Tarentum, and Tarquinios* are all names of towns used as the *Limit of Motion*; i.e., the motion is represented as ending in those towns. They are in the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

|                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Rēducō, rēducērē, rēdūxī, rēductūm, | <i>to lead back.</i>               |
| Rēvocō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,             | <i>to recall.</i>                  |
| Spartā, ae, f.                      | <i>Sparta, capital of Laconia.</i> |
| Tārentūm, ī, n.                     | <i>Tarentum, Italian town.</i>     |
| Thēbānūs, ā, ūm,                    | <i>Theban.</i>                     |
| Thēbānūs, ī, m.                     | <i>a Theban.</i>                   |

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicēro *Romam*<sup>1</sup> revocātus est. 2. Consūles *Romam* revocāti sunt. 3. Hannībal *Carthaginem*<sup>1</sup> revocātus erat. 4. Lysander *Athēnas*<sup>1</sup> navigāvit. 5. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus est. 6. Consul regem Tarentum fugāvit. 7. Thēbāni exercītum Spartam ducunt. 8. Miltiades exercītum Athēnas reduxit.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who fled *to Carthage*?<sup>2</sup> 2. Did not the enemy flee *to Carthage*? 3. They fled *to Carthage*. 4. Will not the army be led back to Rome?<sup>2</sup> 5. The army has been led back to Rome. 6. The commander led the army *to Athens*.

## SECTION V.

### DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used,

I. With Verbs.

II. With Adjectives.

III. With their Derivatives, — Adverbs and Substantives.

### DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT. — A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the

<sup>1</sup> In the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

<sup>2</sup> The Latin word will be in the Accusative, in accordance with Rule IX.



action, — that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

### RULE XII. — Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative :

#### I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs :

Tempōri<sup>1</sup> cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timuērant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Nōbis<sup>1</sup> vita dāta est, *Life has been granted to us.* Cic. Nūmītōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

#### II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons iter hostibūs<sup>2</sup> dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges civitatibūs suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

### EXERCISE LVII.

#### I. Vocabulary.

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| Carthāgīniēsis, ē,                            | Carthaginian.                      |
| Carthāgīniēsis, is, m. and f.                 | a Carthaginian.                    |
| Cōnōn, Cōnōnis, m.                            | Cōnon, Athenian gen <sup>l</sup> . |
| Dēbeō, dēbēre, debui, dēbitūm, ●              | to owe.                            |
| Displīceō, displīcēre, displīcui, displīctūm, | to displease.                      |
| Dōnō, arē, āvi, ātūm,                         | to give.                           |
| Gens, gentis, f.                              | race.                              |
| Grātiā, ae, f.                                | favor, gratitude, thanks.          |
| Lābōrō, arē, āvi, ātūm,                       | to strive for.                     |

<sup>1</sup> Tempōri, sibi, and labōri are in the Dative with the Intransitive verbs *cēdit*, *timuērant* (intransitive here), and *stūdent*; while *nobis* and *Numitōri* are in the Dative with the Passive verbs *data est* and *dēditur*.

<sup>2</sup> Hostibūs is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *iter*, with the Transitive verb *dēdit*. In the same way, *civitātibus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *leges*, with the Transitive verb *scripsērunt*.

|                                     |                            |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Monstrō, arē, āvi, ātūm,            | <i>to show, point out.</i> |
| Plācēō, plācērē, plācui, plācītūm,  | <i>to please.</i>          |
| Sēnectūs, sēnectūtis, <i>f.</i>     | <i>old age.</i>            |
| Sententiā, <i>ac, f.</i>            | <i>opinion.</i>            |
| Serviō, servirē, servīvi, servitūm, | <i>to serve.</i>           |
| Viā, <i>ac, f.</i>                  | <i>way, road.</i>          |

## II. Translate into English.

1. Cives legibus<sup>1</sup> parent. 2. Multae Italiae civitates Romānis parēbant. 3. Haec sententia Caesāri<sup>1</sup> placuit. 4. Illa sententia Caesāri displicuit. 5. Milites gloriae labōrant. 6. Hoc consilium Caesāri nuntiātum est. 7. Nostra consilia hostibus nuntiāta sunt. 8. Tibi<sup>2</sup> magnam gratiam habēmus. 9. Habeo senectūti magnam gratiam. 10. Conon pecuniam civibus donāvit. 11. Pastor puērō viam monstrāvit. 12. Tibi viam monstrābo. 13. Romāni Carthaginiensibus bellum indixērunt.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did I not obey my<sup>3</sup> father?<sup>1</sup> 2. You obeyed your father. 3. We will obey the laws of the state. 4. Do not the citizens serve the king? 5. They have served the king. 6. Will you not serve the state? 7. We will serve the state. 8. Will you not tell me (to me<sup>4</sup>) the truth?<sup>5</sup> 9. I have told you (to you) the truth. 10. Will you show

<sup>1</sup> Indirect Object, in the Dative, according to Rule XII. I.

<sup>2</sup> Indirect Object, in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *gratiam* with the Transitive verb *habēmus*, according to Rule XII. II.

In the arrangement of Objects, the *Indirect* generally precedes the *Direct*, as in this sentence; though the order is sometimes reversed, as in the tenth sentence in this Exercise.

<sup>3</sup> In examples like this, the Possessive pronoun may either be expressed or omitted, as it is often omitted in Latin when not emphatic.

<sup>4</sup> Dative. See Rule XII. II.

<sup>5</sup> Accusative. See Rule XII. II.

me (to me) the way? 11. We will show you the way.  
 12. Did they declare war against the Romans? 13.  
 They had declared war against the Romans.

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

## RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

*Patriae solum omnibus<sup>1</sup> carum est, The soil of their country is dear to all.* Cic. *Id aptum est tempori, This is adapted to the time.* Cic. *Omni aetati mors est communis, Death is common to every age.* Cic. *Canis similis lupo est, A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. *Naturae accommodatum, Adapted to nature.* Cic. *Graeciae utile, Useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE.—The most common are those signifying :

*Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful,* together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis*.

## EXERCISE LVIII.

## I. Vocabulary.

|                                    |                                 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Amicus, a, ūm,</i>              | <i>friendly.</i>                |
| <i>Hispaniā, ae, f.</i>            | <i>Spain.</i>                   |
| <i>Multitudo, multitudinis, f.</i> | <i>multitude.</i>               |
| <i>Saguntum, i, n.</i>             | <i>Saguntum, city in Spain.</i> |
| <i>Similis, e,</i>                 | <i>like.</i>                    |
| <i>Solum, i, n.</i>                | <i>soil.</i>                    |
| <i>Veritas, veritatis, f.</i>      | <i>verity, truth.</i>           |

---

<sup>1</sup> Dative, showing to whom the soil is dear, — dear TO ALL. In the same way in these examples, *tempori* is used with *aptum*, *aetati* with *communis*, *lupo* with *similis*, *naturae* with *accommodatum*, and *Graeciae* with *utile*.

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Parentes nobis*<sup>1</sup> *cari sunt.* 2. *Patria nobis cara est.*  
 3. *Patria tibi*<sup>1</sup> *erit carissima.* 4. *Patriae solum nobis carum est.* 5. *Hannibal exercitui carus fuit.* 6. *Victoria Romānis grata fuit.* 7. *Libertas multitudīni grata est.* 8. *Veritas nobis gratissima est.* 9. *Jucunda mihi oratio fuit.* 10. *Saguntum Romānis amicum fuit.* 11. *Hannibal Saguntum,*<sup>2</sup> *Hispaniae civitatem*<sup>3</sup> *Romānis*<sup>4</sup> *amicam,*<sup>5</sup> *expugnāvit.*

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not these books be useful *to you*? 2. They are useful *to us.* 3. They will be useful *to you.* 4. This law has been useful *to the state.* 5. Will not this book be acceptable *to you*? 6. That book will be acceptable *to me.* 7. This book will be most acceptable<sup>6</sup> *to my brother.*

## SECTION VI.

### GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *of*, and expresses various adjectival relations.

### GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

#### RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

<sup>1</sup> Dative, according to Rule XIV.

<sup>2</sup> Accusative. See Rule V.

<sup>3</sup> Appositive, in agreement with *Saguntum.* See Rule II.

<sup>4</sup> Dative with *amicam.* See Rule XIV.

<sup>5</sup> *Amicam* agrees with *civitatem.* See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

<sup>6</sup> See 162.

Catōnis<sup>1</sup> oratiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic. Castra hostium, *The camp of the enemy.* Liv. Mors Hāmilcāris, *The death of Hamilcar.* Liv. See 363.

## EXERCISE LIX.

## I. Vocabulary.

|                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Commūnis, ē,                | common.                         |
| Conscientiā, ae, f.         | consciousness.                  |
| Dulcis, ē,                  | sweet, pleasant.                |
| Hōnōr, hōnōris, m.          | honor.                          |
| Orbis, orbis, m.            | circle, world.                  |
| Orbis terrārū, <sup>2</sup> | the world.                      |
| Parvū, ū, ūm,               | small.                          |
| Principiū, ii, n.           | beginning.                      |
| Rectū, i, n.                | rectitude, right.               |
| Sōcrātēs, is, m.            | Socrates, Athenian philosopher. |

## II. Translate into English.

1. *Justitia virtūtum*<sup>3</sup> regina est. 2. *Sapientia est mater omnium bonarum artium.* 3. *Socrātes parens philosophiæ* fuit. 4. *Virtus veri hōnōris*<sup>4</sup> mater est. 5. *Patria communis*<sup>5</sup> est omnium nostrum<sup>6</sup> parens. 6. *Roma orbis*<sup>7</sup> terrarum caput fuit. 7. *Omnium rerum principia parva* sunt. 8. *Conscientia recti* est praeium virtutis dulcissimum.

<sup>1</sup> Catōnis qualifies *oratiōnes*, and is in the Genitive, in accordance with the Rule.

<sup>2</sup> Literally *the circle of lands.*

<sup>3</sup> Genitive, depending upon *regina*. Rule XVI.

<sup>4</sup> Genitive, depending upon *mater*.

<sup>5</sup> *Commūnis* agrees with *parens*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

<sup>6</sup> Genitive, depending upon *parens*.

<sup>7</sup> *Orbis* depends upon *caput*, and *terrārū* upon *orbis*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The orations of *Cicero* are praised.
2. The courage of the soldiers saved the city.
3. The crown of the king was golden.
4. The sword of the general was beautiful.
5. The son of the consul violated the laws of the state.
6. The citizens will observe the laws of the state.

## GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

## RULE XVII.—Genitive.

390. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

*Avidus laudis*,<sup>1</sup> *Desirous of praise*. Cic. *Otiū cupidus*, *Desirous of leisure*. Liv. *Amans sui virtus*, *Virtue fond of itself*. Cic. *Efficiens voluptātis*, *Productive of pleasure*. Cic. *Glōriæ mēmor*, *Mindful of glory*. Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force,—*of*, *in respect of*,—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax**, and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *skill*, *recollection*, *participation*, *mastery*, *fulness*, and their contraries.

## EXERCISE LX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

*Amans*, *amantis*,  
*Avidus*, *ā*, *um*,

*loving*, *fond of*.  
*desirous of*, *eager for*.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Laudis* completes the meaning of *avidus*; *desirous* (of what?) *of praise*. It is in the Genitive, by this Rule. In the same way, *otii* completes the meaning of *cupidus*; *sui*, of *amans*; *voluptātis*, of *efficiens*; and *glōriæ*, of *mēmor*.

|                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Certāmen, certāminis, <i>n.</i> | <i>contest, strife, battle.</i> |
| Cūpidus, ū, ūm,                 | <i>desirous of.</i>             |
| Fons, fontis, <i>m.</i>         | <i>fountain.</i>                |
| Laus, laudis, <i>f.</i>         | <i>praise.</i>                  |
| Nōvitas, nōvitātis, <i>f.</i>   | <i>novelty.</i>                 |
| Pēritus, ū, ūm,                 | <i>skilled in.</i>              |
| Piscis, piscis, <i>m.</i>       | <i>fish.</i>                    |
| Plēnus, ū, ūm,                  | <i>full.</i>                    |
| Vōluptas, vōluptātis, <i>f.</i> | <i>pleasure.</i>                |

## II. Translate into English.

1. Romāni avidi gloriæ<sup>1</sup> fuērunt. 2. Homīnes novitātis avidi sunt. 3. Numa pacis<sup>1</sup> erat amantissimus.<sup>2</sup> 4. Patriæ amantissīmi sumus. 5. Consul gloriæ cupidus erat. 6. Cicero gloriæ cupidissimus<sup>2</sup> fuit. 7. Milites erant avidissīmi certāminis. 8. Fons piscium plenissimus est. 9. Athenienses belli navālis peritissīmi fuērunt.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Boys are fond of *praise*. 2. Are you not fond of *praise*? 3. We are fond of *praise*. 4. Were not the Athenians fond of *pleasure*? 5. They were always fond of *pleasure*. 6. They are desirous of *glory*. 7. Are you not desirous of a victory? 8. We are desirous of a victory.

## SECTION VII.

### ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives; while the Genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, completing the meaning of the adjective. See Rule XVII.

<sup>2</sup> See 162.

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

## RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means<sup>1</sup> are denoted by the Ablative :

*Ars utilitāte laudātur, An art is praised because of its usefulness.*  
*Cic. Glōriā dūcitur, He is led by glory.* *Cic. Duobus modis fit, It is done in two ways.* *Cic. Sol omnia luce collustrat, The sun illumines all things with its light.* *Cic. Apri dentibus se tūtantur, Boars defend themselves with their tusks.* *Cic. Aeger erat vulneribus, He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* *Nep. Laetus sorte tua, Pleased with your lot.* *Hor.*

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This Ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which*, any thing is or is done.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This Ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the preposition *cum* ; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*, — *mōre, ordine, ratiōne*, etc., — occur without such accompaniment :

*Vi summa, With the greatest violence.* *Nep. Mōre Persarum, In the manner of the Persians.* *Nep. Cum silentio audire, To hear in silence.* *Liv. Id ordine facere, To do it in order, or properly.* *Cic.*

---

<sup>1</sup> It is not always possible to distinguish between *Cause, Manner, and Means*. Sometimes the same Ablative may involve both *Cause* and *Means*, or both *Means* and *Manner*. Still the pupil should be taught to determine in each instance, as far as possible, what is the real force of the Ablative. Thus in the examples, *utilitāte* denotes cause, because of its usefulness ; *glōriā*, means, with perhaps the accessory notion of cause ; *modis*, manner ; *luce*, means ; *dentibus*, means ; *vulneribus*, cause, with perhaps the accessory notion of means ; and *sorte*, cause and means.



4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. — This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. — This designates the Person by whom any thing is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the preposition *a* or *ab*:

Occisus est a Thēbānis, *He was slain by the Thebans.*<sup>1</sup> Nep.

## EXERCISE LXI.

### I. Vocabulary.

|                                |                      |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| Mūnūs, mūnērīs, <i>n.</i>      | <i>reward, gift.</i> |
| Nātūrā, <i>ae, f.</i>          | <i>nature.</i>       |
| Pellis, pellis, <i>f.</i>      | <i>skin, hide.</i>   |
| Quōtidiānūs, ā, ūm,            | <i>daily.</i>        |
| Scythae, ārum, <i>m. plur.</i> | <i>Scythians.</i>    |
| Triumphō, āre, āvi, ātūm,      | <i>to triumph.</i>   |
| Usūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>            | <i>use.</i>          |
| Vestiō, irē, ivi, itūm,        | <i>to clothe.</i>    |

### II. Translate into English.

1. Consul *virtūte*<sup>2</sup> laudātus est. 2. Urbs *naturā*<sup>3</sup> munita erat. 3. Haec urbs *arte* muniētur. 4. *Muneribus*<sup>3</sup> delectāmur. 5. Roma Camilli *virtūte* est servāta. 6. Camillus hostes magno proelio superāvit. 7. Scipio patrem singulārī *virtūte* servāvit. 8. Scipio ingenti gloriā<sup>4</sup> triumphāvit.<sup>5</sup> 9. Scythae corpōra pellibus vestiebant.

<sup>1</sup> By comparing this example with those under the Rule, the second for instance, it will be seen that the Latin construction distinguishes the person by whom any thing is done from the means by which it is done, designating the former by the Ablative with *a* or *ab* (*a Thēbānis*, by the Thebans), and the latter by the Ablative without a preposition; *gloriā*, by glory.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Cause, according to Rule XXI.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative of Means.

<sup>4</sup> Ablative of Manner.

<sup>5</sup> The privilege of entering Rome in grand triumphal procession was sometimes awarded to eminent Roman generals as they returned from victory. *Triumphāvit* here refers to such a triumph.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are not the fields adorned *with flowers*?<sup>1</sup> 2. The fields are adorned *with beautiful flowers*. 3. Have you not strengthened your memory *by use*? 4. I have strengthened my memory by daily use. 5. You will be praised for (because of) your diligence.<sup>2</sup> 6. Our pupils have been praised for their diligence. 7. The general saved the city by his valor. 8. Rome was saved by the valor of the Roman soldiers.

## ABLATIVES WITH COMPARATIVES.

## RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amabilius virtute,<sup>3</sup> *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.  
Quid est melius bonitate,<sup>3</sup> *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM<sup>4</sup> are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimatur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi<sup>5</sup> terribilior, *More terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of Means. Rule XXI.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Cause.

<sup>3</sup> Virtute and bonitate are both in the Ablative, by this Rule; the former after the comparative *amabilis*, and the latter after the comparative *melius*.

<sup>4</sup> Quam is a conjunction, meaning *than*. Conjunctions are mere connectives, used to connect words or clauses.

<sup>5</sup> Agris and urbi, the one *before* and the other *after* quam, are both in the same construction, in the Dative, depending upon *terribilior* according to Rule XIV. 391.

## EXERCISE LXII.

## I. Vocabulary.

|                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Argentūm, i, n.        | silver.               |
| Avāritiā ae, f.        | avarice.              |
| Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f. | goodness, excellence. |
| Elōquens, elōquentis,  | eloquent.             |
| Ferrūm, i, n.          | iron.                 |
| Foedūs, ā, ūm,         | detestable.           |
| Prētiōsūs, ā, ūm,      | valuable.             |
| Quām, conj.            | than.                 |
| Scientiā, ae, f.       | knowledge.            |
| Turrīs, turrīs, f.     | tower.                |

## II. Translate into English.

1. Virtus mihi<sup>1</sup> *gloriā*<sup>2</sup> est carior. 2. Patria mihi *vitā*<sup>2</sup> meā est carior. 3. Quid est jucundius *amicitiā*? 4. Quid foedius est *avāritiā*? 5. Aurum argento pretiosius est. 6. Anīmus corpore est nobilior. 7. Turrīs altior erat quam murus.<sup>3</sup> 8. Quid multitudīni<sup>1</sup> gratius quam libertas est? 9. Pater tuus est sapientior quam tu.<sup>4</sup> 10. Quis eloquentior fuit quam Demosthēnes?

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Silver is more valuable than *iron*.<sup>2</sup> 2. Virtue is more valuable than *gold*. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than *money*. 4. Will not wisdom be more useful to you than gold? 5. Wisdom will be more useful to me than gold. 6. Goodness is more valuable than <sup>5</sup> knowledge. 7. Good-

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XIV. 391.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative, depending upon the comparative without *quam*, according to Rule XXIII.

<sup>3</sup> In the same case as *turrīs*, the corresponding noun before *quam*. It is the subject of *erat* understood.

<sup>4</sup> Subject of *es* understood.

<sup>5</sup> In this and the following examples use *quam*, according to 417, 1.

ness is dearer to us than glory. 8. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 9. The soldiers were braver than the general.

### ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH any thing is or is done:

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH any thing proceeds, including *Source* and *Separation*.

### RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive:

I. Hannibal in Italiā<sup>1</sup> fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. In nostris castris, *In our camps*. Caes. In Appiā viā, *On the Appian Way*. Cic. Ab urbe prōficiscitur, *He departs from the city*. Caes. Ex Africā, *From Africa*. Liv.

II. Athēnis<sup>2</sup> fuit, *He was at Athens*. Cic. Bābylōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon*. Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth*. Cic. Rōmae<sup>2</sup> fuit, *He was at Rome*. Cic.

### EXERCISE LXIII.

#### I. Vocabulary.

A, āb, *prep. with abl.*

*from, by.*

Bābylōn, Bābylōnis, *f.*

*Babylon, the city of.*

<sup>1</sup> *In Italiā*, *in castris*, and *in viā* designate the PLACE IN WHICH; while *ab urbe* and *ex Africā* designate the PLACE FROM WHICH. They are in the Ablative with a preposition.

<sup>2</sup> *Athēnis*, *Bābylōne*, and *Corintho*, being names of towns, omit the preposition; while *Romae*, also the name of a town, is in the Genitive, as it is in the Singular of the First declension.

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Cōrīnthūs, i, f.        | <i>Corinth</i> , city in Greece.       |
| Dionȳsiūs, ii, m.       | <i>Dionysius</i> , tyrant of Syracuse. |
| Hābitō, āre, āvi, ātūm, | <i>to dwell, reside.</i>               |
| Hortūs, i, m.           | <i>garden.</i>                         |
| Laetitiā, ae, f.        | <i>joy.</i>                            |
| Lūcūs, i, m.            | <i>grove.</i>                          |
| Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, f.     | <i>region, territory.</i>              |
| Sēnātōr, sēnātōris, m.  | <i>senator.</i>                        |
| Trigintā,               | <i>thirty.</i>                         |

## II. Translate into English.

1. Hannibāl in *Hispaniā*<sup>1</sup> fuit. 2. Latīnus in *Italiā* regnāvit. 3. Latīnus in illis regionibus regnābat. 4. Cives ab urbe<sup>2</sup> fugiēbant. 5. Themistōcles e Graeciā fugit. 6. Sex menses<sup>3</sup> *Athēnis*<sup>4</sup> fui. 7. Alexander *Babylōne* erat. 8. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsis fugit. 9. Themistōcles *Athēnis* fugit. 10. *Athēnis* habitābat. 11. Romūlus *Romae*<sup>5</sup> regnāvit. 12. *Romae* ingens laetitia fuit.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Is not your father in *Italy*? 2. My father is in *Greece*. 3. Were you not in *Greece*? 4. We resided in *Greece* three years. 5. Who is in the garden? 6. My brother is in the garden. 7. The pupils were walking in the fields. 8. The nightingales are singing in the groves. 9. Your father resided many years at *Athens*. 10. Did he not reside at Carthage? 11. He resided four years at Carthage. 12. Did you not receive my letter at *Rome*? 13. I received your letter at *Corinth*.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, with the preposition *in*. See Rule XXXII.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH, with the preposition *ab*.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule VIII.

<sup>4</sup> In the Ablative, without a preposition, because it is the name of a town.

<sup>5</sup> In the Genitive, because it is the name of a town, and is in the Singular of the First declension.

## ABLATIVE OF TIME.

## RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogésimo anno<sup>1</sup> est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vēre convēnēre, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātāli die suo, *On his birth-day.* Nep. Hiēme et aestāte, *In winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word so used as to involve the time of an action or event may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugnā*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōriā*, in memory, i.e., in the time of one's recollection.

## EXERCISE LXIV.

## I. Vocabulary.

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Brūtus, i, m.                        | <i>Brutus, a Roman patriot.</i>         |
| Dēflāgrō, āre, āvī, ātūm,            | <i>to burn, be consumed.</i>            |
| Diānā, ae, f.                        | <i>Diana, a goddess.</i>                |
| Ephēsiūs, ā, ūm,                     | <i>Ephesian, of Ephesus.</i>            |
| Hiēms, hiēmīs, f.                    | <i>winter.</i>                          |
| Nātālis, ē,                          | <i>belonging to one's birth, natal.</i> |
| Nātālis diēs,                        | <i>birth-day.</i>                       |
| Pompēiūs, ii, m.                     | <i>Pompey, Roman general.</i>           |
| Persae, ārūm, m. plur.               | <i>Persians.</i>                        |
| Scribō, scribēre, scripsi, scriptūm, | <i>to write.</i>                        |
| Tempūs, tempōris, n.                 | <i>time.</i>                            |

## II. Translate into English.

1. Nātāli die<sup>2</sup> tuo scripsisti epistolam. 2. Eōdem die epistolam tuam accēpi.<sup>3</sup> 3. Pompēius urbem tertio mense

<sup>1</sup> Anno, vere, die, hiēme, and aestāte are all in the Ablative, by this Rule.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Time, according to Rule XXVIII.

<sup>3</sup> From accipio.

cepit. 4. Eödem *die* Persae superāti sunt. 5. Pompēius illo tempöre miles fuit. 6. Illo anno Diānae Ephesiae templum deflagrāvit. 7. Occāsu solis hostes fugāti sunt. 8. Illo die Brutus patriam servāvit.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were you not in Athens<sup>1</sup> *at that time*? 2. We were at Corinth<sup>2</sup> *at that time*. 3. Do you not reside in the city<sup>1</sup> *in winter*? 4. We reside in this beautiful city in the winter. 5. The city was taken at sunset. 6. Were you not in the city at that hour? 7. I was in the city at that time. 8. Were you not in Rome<sup>2</sup> on your birth-day? 9. I was in that city on my birth-day.

## SECTION VIII.

### CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

#### RULE XXXII. — Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad āmicum<sup>3</sup> scripsi, *I have written to a friend*. Cic. In cūriam, *Into the senate-house*. Liv. In Italiā, *In Italy*. Nep. Pro castris, *Before the camp*.

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, āpud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *To the city*. Cic. Adversus deos, *Toward the gods*. Cic.

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

|                |         |        |       |        |
|----------------|---------|--------|-------|--------|
| A or ab (abs), | absque, | cōram, | cum,  | dē,    |
| e or ex,       | prae,   | pro,   | sine, | tēnus: |

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of Place. See Rule XXVI.

<sup>2</sup> Genitive of Place. See Rule XXVI. II.

<sup>3</sup> The Accusative *amicum* is here used with the preposition *ad*; *curiam*, with *in*; the Ablative *Italiā*, with *in*. See 435, 1.

Ab urbe, *From the city.* Caes. Cōram conventu, *In the presence of the assembly.* Nep.

435. The ACCUSATIVE or ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, sūper:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia.* Cic. Hannibāl in Itāliā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither*, the Ablative in answer to *where*: In Asiam, (*whither?*) *into Asia*; In Itāliā, (*where?*) *in Italy*.

## EXERCISE LXV.

### I. Vocabulary.

|                                  |                      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| Adversūs, <i>prep. with acc.</i> | <i>against.</i>      |
| Dimicō, āre, āvi, ātūm,          | <i>to fight.</i>     |
| Pēr, <i>prep. with acc.</i>      | <i>of, through.</i>  |
| Prospere, <i>adv.</i>            | <i>successfully.</i> |
| Prōvocō, āre, āvi, ātūm,         | <i>to challenge.</i> |

### II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii hostes ad *proelium* provocābant. 2. Scipio contra *Hannōnem*, ducem Carthaginiensium, prospere pugnat. 3. Caesar adversus Pompeiūm dimicāvit. 4. Veritas per se<sup>1</sup> mihi grata est. 5. Virtus per se laudabilis est. 6. Persae a *Graecis*<sup>2</sup> superāti sunt. 7. Cicero de *amicitiā* scripsit.

### III. Translate into Latin.

1. Will not the army be led back to *the city*? 2. It has been led back to *the city*. 3. Will you not write to me? 4. I will write to you. 5. Friendship is valuable of itself. 6. Have you not received five letters from *me*? 7. I have received four letters from *you*. 8. I have received two letters from your brother.

<sup>1</sup> *Per se*, literally *through itself*: render *in itself* or *of itself*.

<sup>2</sup> *A Graecis*, by the Greeks. See 414, 5.



## SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

---

I. THE preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves,

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

### MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word, without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case, number, mood, tense*, etc.; and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark these properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mensa*, a table, but not of *mensarum*, of tables: the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *arum*.

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will not only readily distinguish the different parts of speech from each other, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.
2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case, number, voice, mood, tense*, etc.

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means, you will discover not only the relation of the words to each other, but also an important part of their meaning, — that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (345, I.) will be found in the simple subject and predicate; i.e., in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence, in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will, in most instances, enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied, in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates: as, *audio*, I hear, the ending *io* showing that the subject is *ego*; *auditis*, you hear, the ending *itis* showing that the subject is *vos*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now, combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject; i.e., adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i.e. (1) Oblique cases, accusatives, datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (345, II., III.), discover first the connectives which unite the several members, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are not to look for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nom. Sing. of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom. Sing.

If *vobis* occurs, you must remember that the Nom. Sing. is *tu*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nom. Sing.

Thus *mensibus*; stem *mens*, Nom. Sing. *mensis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *urbem*, *urb*, *urbs*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. Act.

Thus *amābat*; stem *am*, First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. *amo*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *amavērunt*; First Pers. Perf. *amāvi*, Perf. stem *amav*, Verb stem *am*; *amo*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

### *Model.*

VIII. Themistōcles imperātor servitūte totam Graeciam liberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their forms,

1) That *Themistōcles* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nom. Sing.

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Abl. Sing.

3) That *totam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accus. Sing.

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Act. voice, Indic. mood, Perf. tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistocles* is the name of an eminent Athenian general : **THEMISTOCLES**.

2) That *libero*, for which you must look, not for *liberavit*, means *to liberate* : **LIBERATED**.

Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperator* means *commander* : **THE COMMANDER**.

Themistocles the commander liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country : **GREECE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *totus* means *the whole, all* : **ALL**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servitus* means *servitude* : **FROM SERVITUDE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

#### STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing*<sup>1</sup> it, and by *parsing* the words which compose it.

#### *Parsing.*

XVII.<sup>2</sup> In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.

2. Inflect<sup>3</sup> it, if capable of inflection.

3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.<sup>4</sup>

4. Give its Syntax, and the Rule for it.<sup>5</sup>

#### TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

<sup>1</sup> It has not been thought advisable to enter upon the subject of *analysis* at this early stage of the course. That will be presented in the Reader, which follows this work.

<sup>2</sup> These suggestions are taken, without change, from the Reader. Accordingly, the numerals are made to correspond to those in that work.

<sup>3</sup> Inflect; i.e., decline, compare, or conjugate.

<sup>4</sup> That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

<sup>5</sup> For Models for Parsing, see pp. 16, 22, 24, 33, 55, 57, 59, 66, 71, and 73.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

*For Explanation of Abbreviations and References, see p. ix.*

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p style="text-align: center;">A.</p> <p>A, ab, <i>prep. with abl.</i> <i>From, by.</i></p> <p>Accipio, accipere, accipi, acceptum. <i>To receive.</i></p> <p>Acē, acris, acere. <i>Sharp, severe, valiant.</i></p> <p>Aciēs, aciēi, <i>f.</i> <i>Order of battle, battle-array, army.</i></p> <p>Ad, <i>prep. with acc.</i> <i>To, towards, near.</i></p> <p>Administrō, are, avi, atum. <i>To administer, manage.</i></p> <p>Admoneō, admoneē, admonui, admonitum. <i>To admonish.</i></p> <p>Adventus, ūs, <i>m.</i> <i>Arrival, approach.</i></p> <p>Adversus, <i>prep. with acc.</i> <i>Against.</i></p> <p>Aedifico, are, avi, atum. <i>To build.</i></p> <p>Aestas, aestatis, <i>f.</i> <i>Summer.</i></p> <p>Agēr, agri, <i>m.</i> <i>Field, land.</i></p> <p>Agger, aggeris, <i>m.</i> <i>Mound, rampart.</i></p> <p>Agis, Agidis, <i>m.</i> <i>Agis, a king of Sparta.</i></p> <p>Albanus, ū, ūm. <i>Alban.</i></p> <p>Alexander, Alexandri, <i>m.</i> <i>Alexander, the Great.</i></p> <p>Aliquis, aliquis, aliquid or aliquod. <i>Some, some one. See 191.</i></p> <p>Altus, ū, ūm. <i>High, lofty.</i></p> <p>Amanus, amantis. <i>Loving, fond of.</i></p> | <p>Ambulo, are, avi, atum. <i>To walk.</i></p> <p>Amicitia, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Friendship.</i></p> <p>Amicus, ū, ūm. <i>Friendly.</i></p> <p>Amicus, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Friend.</i></p> <p>Amnis, amnis, <i>m.</i> <i>River.</i></p> <p>Amor, amoris, <i>m.</i> <i>Love.</i></p> <p>Amplio, are, avi, atum. <i>To enlarge.</i></p> <p>Ancus, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Ancus, a Roman king.</i></p> <p>Animal, animalis, <i>n.</i> <i>Animal.</i></p> <p>Animus, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Soul, mind, passion, disposition.</i></p> <p>Annulus, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Ring.</i></p> <p>Annus, i, <i>m.</i> <i>Year.</i></p> <p>Antē, <i>prep. with acc.</i> <i>Before.</i></p> <p>Antiquus, ū, ūm. <i>Ancient.</i></p> <p>Apis, apis, <i>f.</i> <i>Bee.</i></p> <p>Appello, are, avi, atum. <i>To call.</i></p> <p>Appetens, appetentis. <i>Desiring, striving for.</i></p> <p>Apud, <i>prep. with acc.</i> <i>In the presence of, near, before, among.</i></p> <p>Apulia, ae, <i>f.</i> <i>Apulia, a country in Italy.</i></p> <p>Arabs, Arabis, <i>m</i> and <i>f.</i> <i>Arab, an Arab.</i></p> <p>Arcte, <i>adv.</i> <i>Closely, soundly.</i></p> <p>Argentum, i, <i>n.</i> <i>Silver.</i></p> <p>Arō, arare, aravi, aratum. <i>To plough.</i></p> |
|---|--|

**Arrōgantiā, ae, f.** *Arrogance.*  
**Ars, artis, f.** *Art, skill.*  
**Artāxerxēs, is, m.** *Artaxerxes, a Persian king.*  
**Arx, arcis, f.** *Citadel, fortress.*  
**Athēnae, ārum, f. plur.** *Athens, the capital of Attica.*  
**Athēniensis, ē.** *Athenian.*  
**Athēniensis, is, m. and f.** *Athenian, an Athenian.*  
**Atticus, ī, m.** *Atticus, a Roman name.*  
**Audiō, irē, ivi, itum.** *To hear.*  
**Audītōr, audītōris, m.** *Hearer, auditor.*  
**Aureus, ū, m.** *Golden.*  
**Aurum, ī, n.** *Gold.*  
**Avāritiā, ae, f.** *Avarice.*  
**Avīdus, ū, m.** *Desirous of, eager for.*  
**Avīs, āvis, f.** *Bird.*

## B.

**Bābylōn, Bābylōnis, f.** *Babylon, the celebrated capital of the Assyrian Empire, on the banks of the Euphrates.*  
**Beātus, ū, m.** *Happy, blessed.*  
**Bellum, ī, n.** *War, warfare.*  
**Bēnē, adv.** *Well.*  
**Bēnignē, adv.** *Kindly.*  
**Bōnitas, bōnitatis, f.** *Goodness, excellence.*  
**Bōnus, ū, m.** *Good.*  
**Brēvis, ē.** *Short, brief.*  
**Brūtus, ī, m.** *Brutus, a celebrated Roman patriot.*

## C.

**Caesar, Caesaris, m.** *Cæsar, a celebrated Roman commander.*  
**Caius, ii, m.** *Caius, a proper name.*

**Cāmillus, ī, m.** *Camillus, a Roman general.*  
**Campūs, ī, m.** *Plain.*  
**Cānis, cānis, m. and f.** *Dog.*  
**Cantō, ārē, āvi, ātum.** *To sing.*  
**Cantus, ūs, m.** *Singing, song.*  
**Cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpi, captum.** *To take, capture.*  
**Cāpit, cāpitis, n.** *Head, capital.*  
**Carmin, carminis, n.** *Song, poem, verse.*  
**Carthāgīniensis, ē.** *Carthaginian.*  
**Carthāgīniensis, is, m. and f.** *A Carthaginian.*  
**Carthāgō, Carthāginis, f.** *Carthage, a city of Northern Africa.*  
**Carthāgō Nōvā.** *New Carthage, Carthage, a city of Spain.*  
**Cārus, ū, m.** *Dear.*  
**Cātō, Cātōnis, m.** *Cato, a distinguished Roman.*  
**Centum.** *One hundred. See 175, 2.*  
**Certāmen, certāminis, n.** *Contest, strife, battle.*  
**Cibūs, ī, m.** *Food.*  
**Cicērō, Cicērōnis, m.** *Cicero, the celebrated Roman orator.*  
**Civilis, ē.** *Civil.*  
**Civis, civis, m. and f.** *Citizen.*  
**Civitas, civitatis, f.** *State, city.*  
**Clārus, ū, m.** *Renowned, distinguished, illustrious.*  
**Classis, classis, f.** *Fleet, navy.*  
**Coerceō, coercērē, coercui, coercitum.** *To check.*  
**Cōlō, cōlērē, cōlui, cultum.** *To practise, cultivate.*  
**Communis, ē.** *Common.*  
**Condemnō, ārē, āvi, ātum.** *To condemn.*  
**Condītōr, condītōris, m.** *Founder.*  
**Conjux, conjūgis, m. and f.** *Wife, husband, spouse.*

- Cōnōn, Cōnōnīs, *m.* *Conon*, an Athenian general.
- Conscientiā, *ae, f.* *Consciousness.*
- Consiliū, *ii, n.* *Design, plan.*
- Conspectūs, *ūs, m.* *Sight, view, presence.*
- Consul, consulis, *m.* *Consul.*
- Contrā, *prep. with acc.* *Against, opposite to, contrary to.*
- Convocō, arē, avi, atum. *To assemble, call together.*
- Cōrinthūs, *i, f.* *Corinth*, city in Greece.
- Corneliūs, *ii, m.* *Cornelius*, a Roman name.
- Cōrōnā, *ae, f.* *Crown.*
- Corpus, corporis, *n.* *Body, person.*
- Creō, arē, avi, atum. *To create, make, appoint, elect.*
- Crūdēlis, *ē.* *Cruel.*
- Crūdūs, *ū, ūm.* *Unripe.*
- Culpō, arē, avi, atum. *To blame.*
- Cūm, *prep. with abl.* *With.*
- Cūpidūs, *ū, ūm.* *Desirous of.*
- Cūrēs, Cūritū, *m. plur.* *Cures*, a Sabine town.
- Custodiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To guard.*
- Custōs, custōdis, *m. and f.* *Keeper, guard.*
- D.**
- Dē, *prep. with abl.* *Concerning.*
- Dēbō, debērē, debui, debītum. *To owe.*
- Dēcēm. *Ten.* See 175.
- Dēcimūs, *ū, ūm.* *Tenth.*
- Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, *f.* *Eclipse.*
- Dēflāgrō, arē, avi, atum. *To burn, be consumed.*
- Dēlectō, arē, avi, atum. *To delight, please.*
- Dēmārātūs, *i, m.* *Demaratus*, a Corinthian.
- Dēmōsthēnēs, *is, m.* *Demosthenes*, the celebrated Athenian orator.
- Diānā, *ae, f.* *Diana*, the goddess of the chase.
- Dicō, dicērē, dixi, dictum. *To say, speak, tell.*
- Diēs, diēi, *m.* *Day.* See 119, note.
- Diligens, diligentis. *Diligent.*
- Diligentiā, *ae, f.* *Diligence.*
- Dīmīcō, arē, avi, atum. *To fight.*
- Diōnysius, *ii, m.* *Dionysius*, tyrant of Syracuse.
- Discipulūs, *i, m.* *Pupil.*
- Disertē, *adv.* *Clearly, eloquently.*
- Displicēō, displicērē, displicui, displicitum. *To displease.*
- Divinus, *ū, ūm.* *Divine.*
- Dōlōr, dōlōris, *m.* *Pain, grief, suffering.*
- Dōnō, arē, avi, atum. *To give, present.*
- Dōnū, *i, n.* *Gift.*
- Dormiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To sleep.*
- Dracō, Dracōnis, *m.* *Draco*, an Athenian lawgiver.
- Dūcenti, *ae, ū.* *Two hundred.*
- Dūcō, dūcērē, duxi, ductum. *To lead.*
- Dulcis, *ē.* *Sweet, pleasant.*
- Duō, *ae, ō.* *Two.* See 176.
- Dūplicō, arē, avi, atum. *To double, increase.*
- Dux, dūcis, *m. and f.* *Leader, general.*
- E.**
- E, ex, *prep. with abl.* *From.*
- Ebrietas, ebrietatis, *f.* *Drunkenness.*
- Edūcō, edūcērē, eduxi, eductum. *To lead forth, lead out.*
- Effugiō, effugērē, effugi, effugitum. *To escape.*
- Egō, mei. *I.* See 184.

Egrēgius, ā, ūm. *Distinguished.*  
 Egrēgiē, adv. *Excellently.*  
 Elēphantus, i, m. *Elephant.*  
 Elōquens, elōquentis. *Eloquent.*  
 Elōquentiā, ae, f. *Eloquence.*  
 Ephēsius, ā, ūm. *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*  
 Epīrus, i, f. *Epirus, a country in Greece.*  
 Epistōlā, ae, f. *Letter.*  
 Erūdiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To instruct, refine, educate.*  
 Erūditus, ā, ūm. *Learned, instructed in.*  
 Ex, prep. *with abl. From.*  
 Exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitum. *To exercise, train.*  
 Exercitus, ūs, m. *Army.*  
 Expugnō, arē, avi, atum. *To take, take by storm.*  
 Expectō, arē, avi, atum. *To await, expect.*  
 Exsul, exsulis, m. and f. *Exile.*

## F.

Faciēs, faciēi, f. *Face, appearance.*  
 Ferrum, i, n. *Iron.*  
 Fertilis, ē. *Fertile.*  
 Fidelitas, fidelitatis, f. *Fidelity, faithfulness.*  
 Fides, fidei, f. *Faith, fidelity.*  
 Fidus, ā, ūm. *Faithful.*  
 Filiā, ae, f. *Daughter.*  
 Filius, ii, m. *Son.*  
 Finiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To finish, bring to a close.*  
 Finis, finis, m. *Limit, territory.*  
 Firmō, arē, avi, atum. *To strengthen, confirm.*  
 Flāminius, ii, m. *Flaminius, a Roman general.*  
 Flōs, flōris, m. *Flower.*  
 Foedus, ā, ūm. *Detestable.*

Fons, fontis, m. *Fountain.*  
 Fortis, ē. *Brave.*  
 Fortitēr, adv. *Bravely.*  
 Fortitūdō, fortitudinis, f. *Bravery, fortitude.*  
 Fossā, ae, f. *Ditch, moat.*  
 Frāter, frātris, m. *Brother.*  
 Fructus, ūs, m. *Fruit, produce, income.*  
 Frumentum, i, n. *Corn, grain.*  
 Fugā, ae, f. *Flight.*  
 Fugiō, fugēre, fugi, fugitum. *To flee, fly, run away.*  
 Fugō, arē, avi, atum. *To rout, drive away.*  
 Fūnestus, ā, ūm. *Destructive.*  
 Fūrōr, fūrōris, m. *Madness, insanity.*

## G.

Gallus, i, m. *Gallus, a proper name.*  
 Gallus, i, m. *Gaul, an inhabitant of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.*  
 Gemmā, ae, f. *Gem.*  
 Gēnēr, gēneri, m. *Son-in-law.*  
 Gens, gentis, f. *Race.*  
 Germāniā, ae, f. *Germany.*  
 Glādius, ii, m. *Sword.*  
 Glōbōsus, ā, ūm. *Spherical.*  
 Glōriā, ae, f. *Glory.*  
 Graeciā, ae, f. *Greece.*  
 Graecus, ā, ūm. *Grecian, Greek.*  
 Graecus, i, m. *Greek, a Greek.*  
 Grātiā, ae, f. *Favor, gratitude, thanks.*  
 Grātus, ā, ūm. *Acceptable, pleasing.*  
 Grex, grēgis, m. *Herd, flock.*

## H.

Hābeō, hāberē, hābui, hābitum. *To have, hold.*  
 Hābitō, arē, avi, atum. *To dwell, reside.*



Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, *m.* *Hannibal*, a celebrated Carthaginian general.

Hannō, Hannōnīs, *m.* *Hanno*, a Carthaginian general.

Hastā, *ae, f.* *Spear.*

Hic, haec, hōc. *This.*

Hiems, hiēmīs, *f.* *Winter.*

Hirundō, hirundīnīs, *f.* *Swallow.*

Hispaniā, *ae, f.* *Spain.*

Hispaniūs, *i, m.* *A Spaniard.*

Hōmērūs, *i, m.* *Homer*, the celebrated Grecian poet.

Hōmō, hōmīnīs, *m.* *Man.*

Hōnōr, hōnōrīs, *m.* *Honor.*

Hōrā, *ae, f.* *Hour.*

Hostīs, hostīs, *m. and f.* *Enemy.*

## I.

Idēm, eadēm, idēm. *Same, the same.* See 186.

Ignorō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To be ignorant of, not to know.*

Illē, illā, illūd. *That, he, she, it.* See 186.

Illustrō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To illustrate, illumine.*

Imāgō, imāgīnīs, *f.* *Image, picture.*

Impātiens, impātiētīs. *Impatient.*

Impērātōr, impērātōrīs, *m.* *Commander.*

Impēriūm, *ii, n.* *Reign, power, government.*

Impētūs, *ūs, m.* *Attack.*

Imprōbitās, imprōbitātīs, *f.* *Wickedness.*

In, *prep. with acc. and abl.* *Into, in, within.*

Incertūs, *ā, ūm.* *Uncertain.*

Indicō, indicērē, indicī, indictūm. *To declare.*

Infestō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To infest.*

Ingens, ingentīs. *Huge, large, great.*

Innocens, innocentīs. *Innocent.*

Insāniā, *ae, f.* *Insanity.*

Insulā, *ae, f.* *Island.*

Intēr, *prep. with acc.* *Between, among, in the midst of.*

Intrō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To enter.*

Inventōr, inventōrīs, *m.* *Inventor.*

Invitō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To invite.*

Ipsē, ipsā, ipstūm. *Self, he, himself.* See 186.

Is, eā, Id. *That, he, she, it.*

Istē, istā, istūd. *That, such.* See 186.

Italiā, *ae, f.* *Italy.*

## J.

Jaciō, jacērē, jeci, jactūm. *To cast, throw, hurl.*

Jām, *adv.* *Now, already.*

Jucundūs, *ā, ūm.* *Delightful, pleasant.*

Jūdex, jūdīcis, *m. and f.* *Judge.*

Jungō, jungērē, junxī, junctūm. *To join.*

Justitiā, *ae, f.* *Justice.*

Justūs, *ā, ūm.* *Upright, just.*

Jūvenīs, jūvenīs, *m. and f.* *A youth, young man.*

Jūventūs, jūventūtīs, *f.* *Youth, a youth, a young person.*

## L.

Lābōr, lābōrīs, *m.* *Labor.*

Lābōrō, arē, āvī, ātūm. *To strive for, labor, work.*

Lacēdaemoniūs, *ii, m.* *Spartan, a Spartan, inhabitant of Sparta in Greece.*

Laetitiā, *ae, f.* *Joy.*

Lāpis, lāpīdīs, *m.* *Stone.*

Lātīnē, *adv.* *In Latin.*

Lātīnūs, *i, m.* *Latinus, a Latin king.*

Lātūs, *ā, ūm.* *Broad.*

Laudābīlis, ē. *Praiseworthy, laudable.*

Laudō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To praise.*

Laus, laudis, *f. Praise.*

Lāvinia, ac, *f. Lavinia, a proper name.*

Lēgātīō, lēgātīōnis, *f. Embassy.*

Lēgātūs, ī, *m. Ambassador.*

Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, *f. Legion, a body of soldiers.*

Lēgō, lēgērē, lēgi, lectūm. *To choose, appoint.*

Leō, leōnis, *m. Lion.*

Lētālis, ē. *Mortal, deadly.*

Lex, lēgis, *f. Law.*

Libēr, librī, *m. Book.*

Libērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To liberate.*

Libertās, libertātis, *f. Liberty.*

Longūs, ā, ūm. *Long.*

Lūcūs, ī, *m. Grove.*

Lūnā, ae, *f. Moon.*

Luscīniā, ae, *f. Nightingale.*

Lux, lūcis, *f. Light.*

Luxuriā, ae, *f. Luxury.*

Lycurgūs, ī, *m. Lycurgus, a Spartan lawgiver.*

Lysandēr, Lysandri, *m. Lysander, a Spartan general.*

### M.

Mācedōniā, ae, *f. Macedonia, Macedonia, a country of Northern Greece.*

Māgīstēr, māgistrī, *m. Master, teacher.*

Magnōpērē, *adv. Greatly.*

Magnūs, ā, ūm. *Great, large.*

Mālūm, ī, *n. Evil.*

Marcellūs, ī, *m. Marcellus, a celebrated Roman general.*

Mārē, mārīs, *n. Sea.*

Mātēr, mātīs, *f. Mother.*

Mātūrūs, ā, ūm. *Ripe.*

Mēmōriā, ae, *f. Memory.*

Mensā, ae, *f. Table.*

Mensis, mensīs, *m. Month.*

Mercēs, mercēdis, *f. Reward.*

Mēreō, mērērē, mēruī, mērītūm. *To deserve, merit.*

Metūs, ā, ūm. *My. See 185.*

Milēs, militīs, *m. Soldier.*

Miltiādēs, īs, *m. Miltiades, an Athenian general.*

Mōdestiā, ae, *f. Modesty.*

Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm. *To advise.*

Mons, montīs, *m. Mountain.*

Monstrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To show, point out.*

Mōrā, ae, *f. Delay.*

Mors, mortīs, *f. Death.*

Multitūdō, multitudīnis, *f. Multitude.*

Multūs, ā, ūm. *Much, many.*

Mundūs, ī, *m. World, universe.*

Mūniō, irē, īvī, itūm. *To fortify, defend.*

Mūnūs, mūnērīs, *n. Gift, present.*

Mūrūs, ī, *m. Wall.*

Mūtātiō, mūtātiōnis, *f. Change, phase.*

### N.

Nātālīs, ē. *Belonging to one's birth, natal.*

Nātālīs diēs. *Birth-day.*

Nātūrā, ae, *f. Nature.*

Nāvālīs, ē. *Naval.*

Nāvīgō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To sail to.*

Nāvis, nāvīs, *f. Ship.*

Nēcessāriūs, ā, ūm. *Necessary.*

Nēcessitās, nēcessitātis, *f. Necessity.*

Nēpōs, nēpōtis, *m. Grandson.*

Nōbīlis, ē. *Noble.*

Nōmēn, nōmīnis, *n. Name.*

Nōmīnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To call, name.*

*Nōn, adv. Not.*

*Nonnē, interrog. part. Expects the answer, Yes. See 346, II., 2.*

*Nostēr, nostrā, nostrūm. Our, our own, ours.*

*Nōvītās, nōvītātis, f. Novelty.*

*Nōvūs, ā, ūm. New.*

*Nox, noctis, f. Night.*

*Nūbēs, nūbīs, f. Cloud.*

*Nūm, interrog. part. Expects the answer, No. See 346, II., 1.*

*Nūmā, ae, m. Numa, a Roman king.*

*Nūmērūs, ī, m. Number, quantity.*

*Nummūs, ī, m. Money, a piece of money, a coin.*

*Nuntīō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. To proclaim, announce.*

### O.

*Obsēs, obsidīs, m. and f. Hostage.*

*Occāsūs, ūs, m. Setting, going down.*

*Occūpō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. To occupy, take possession of.*

*Octāvūs, ā, ūm. Eighth.*

*Octō. Eight. See 175, 2.*

*Octōgintā. Eighty. See 175, 2.*

*Oculūs, ī, m. Eye.*

*Odiōsūs, ā, ūm. Odious, hateful.*

*Omnīs, ē. All, every, whole.*

*Oppidūm, ī, n. Town, city.*

*Oppugnō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. To besiege, take by storm.*

*Optō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. To wish for, desire.*

*Opulētūs, ā, ūm. Rich, opulent.*

*Opūs, ōpēris, n. Work.*

*Orātiō, orātiōnis, f. Oration, speech.*

*Orātōr, orātōris, m. Orator.*

*Orbīs, orbīs, m. Circle.*

*Orbīs terrārūm. The world.*

*Ornō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. To adorn, be an ornament to.*

*Ovis, ōvis, f. Sheep.*

### P.

*Pārens, pārentis, m. and f. Parent.*

*Pāreō, pārerē, pārui, pāritūm. To obey.*

*Pars, partis, f. Part, portion.*

*Parvūs, ā, ūm. Small.*

*Passēr, passēris, m. Sparrow.*

*Pastōr, pastōris, m. Shepherd.*

*Pātēr, pātris, m. Father.*

*Pātriā, ae, f. Native country, country.*

*Paulūs, ī, m. Paulus, a Roman consul.*

*Pax, pacis, f. Peace.*

*Pēcūniā, ae, f. Money.*

*Pellis, pellis, f. Skin, hide.*

*Pēr, prep. with acc. Of, through.*

*Pērāgrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. To wander through.*

*Pēritūs, ā, ūm. Skilled in.*

*Persā, ae, m. A Persian.*

*Pēs, pēdis, m. Foot.*

*Philippūs, ī, m. Philip, king of Macedon.*

*Philōsōphiā, ae, f. Philosophy.*

*Philōsōphūs, ī, m. Philosopher.*

*Piētās, piētātis, f. Filial affection, piety, duty.*

*Pirātā, ae, m. Pirate.*

*Piscis, piscis, m. Fish.*

*Pisistrātūs, ī, m. Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.*

*Plāceō, plācērē, plācui, plācītūm. To please.*

*Plēnūs, ā, ūm. Full.*

*Poenūs, ā, ūm. Carthaginian.*

*Poenus, ī, m. A Carthaginian.*

*Pōmūm, ī, n. Fruit.*

*Pompiliūs, ii, m. Pompilius, a Roman name.*

*Pompēiūs, ii, m. Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.*

*Pondūs, pondēris, n. Weight, mass.*

Portūs, ūs, *m.* *Port, harbor.*  
 Post, *prep. with acc. After.*  
 Pōtens, pōtētis. *Powerful, able.*  
 Praebē, praebēre, praebui, praebitūm. *To show, furnish, give.*  
 Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, *m.* *Teacher, instructor.*  
 Praeceptūm, i, *n.* *Rule, precept.*  
 Praelārūs, ā, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished.*  
 Praedicō, praedicēre, praedixi, praedictūm. *To predict, foretell.*  
 Praemium, ii, *n.* *Reward.*  
 Prātūm, i, *n.* *Meadow.*  
 Prētiosūs, ā, ūm. *Valuable.*  
 Primūs, ā, ūm. *First.*  
 Principium, ii, *n.* *Beginning.*  
 Prō, *prep. with abl. In behalf of, for.*  
 Proeliūm, ii, *n.* *Battle.*  
 Prospere, *adv. Successfully.*  
 Prōvōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To challenge.*  
 Prudentiā, ae, *f.* *Prudence.*  
 Publius, ii, *m.* *Publius, a Roman name.*  
 Puellā, ae, *f.* *Girl.*  
 Puēr, puēri, *m.* *Boy.*  
 Pugnā, ae, *f.* *Battle.*  
 Pugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To fight.*  
 Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm. *Beautiful.*  
 Pūnicūs, ā, ūm. *Carthaginian, Punic.*  
 Pyrrhūs, i, *m.* *Pyrrhus, a king of Epirus.*

## Q.

Quām, *conj. Than.*  
 Quartūs, ā, ūm. *Fourth.*  
 Quattuor. *Four. See 175, 2.*  
 Quī, quae, quōd, *rel. pronoun. Who, which, what. See 187.*

Quinquāgintā. *Fifty. See 175, 2.*  
 Quinquē. *Five. See 175, 2.*  
 Quintūs, ā, ūm. *Fifth.*  
 Quis, quae, quid? *interrog. pronoun. Who, which, what? See 188.*  
 Quivis, quaevis, quodvis, or quidvis, *indef. pronoun. Whoever, whatever. See 191.*  
 Quōtidianūs, ā, ūm. *Daily.*  
 Quōtidie, *adv. Daily.*

## R.

Rāmūs, i, *m.* *Branch.*  
 Ratiō, ratiōnis, *f.* *Reason.*  
 Rectē, *adv. Rightly.*  
 Rectūm, i, *n.* *Right, rectitude.*  
 Rēducō, rēducēre, rēdixi, rēductūm. *To lead back.*  
 Rēginā, ae, *f.* *Queen.*  
 Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, *f.* *Region, territory.*  
 Rēgulus, i, *m.* *Regulus, a Roman general.*  
 Regnō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To reign.*  
 Regnūm, i, *n.* *Kingdom, royal authority.*  
 Rēgō, rēgēre, rexī, rectūm. *To rule.*  
 Rēnōvō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To renew.*  
 Rēs, rei, *f.* *Thing, affair.*  
 Rēs publicā. *Republic.*  
 Rēvōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To recall.*  
 Rex, rēgis, *m.* *King.*  
 Rhēnūs, i, *m.* *Rhine.*  
 Rōmā, ae, *f.* *Rome.*  
 Rōmānūs, ā, ūm. *Roman.*  
 Rōmānūs, i, *m.* *Roman, a Roman.*  
 Rōmulus, i, *m.* *Romulus, the founder of Rome.*

## S.

Sāguntūm, i, *n.* *Saguntum, a town in Spain.*

Sālus, sālūtis, *f.* *Safety.*  
 Sālūtāris, ē. *Beneficial, salutary, advantageous.*  
 Sālūtō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To salute.*  
 Sanctūs, ā, ūm. *Holy, sacred.*  
 Sāpiens, sāpientis. *Wise.*  
 Sāpientēr, *adv.* *Wisely.*  
 Sāpientiā, ae, *f.* *Wisdom.*  
 Schōlā, ae, *f.* *School.*  
 Scientiā, ae, *f.* *Knowledge.*  
 Scipiō, Scipiōnis, *m.* *Scipio, a distinguished Roman.*  
 Scribō, scribēre, scripsi, scriptum. *To write.*  
 Scythae, ārum, *m. plur.* *The Scythians.*  
 Secundūs, ā, ūm. *Second, favorable.*  
 Sempēr, *adv.* *Always, ever.*  
 Sēnātor, sēnātoris, *m.* *Senator.*  
 Sēnātūs, ūs, *m.* *Senate.*  
 Sēnectūs, sēnectūtis, *f.* *Old age.*  
 Sensūs, ūs, *m.* *Feeling, perception, sense.*  
 Sententiā, ae, *f.* *Opinion.*  
 Sermō, sermōnis, *m.* *Discourse, conversation.*  
 Serviō, irē, ivi, itum. *To serve.*  
 Serviūs, ii, *m.* *Servius, a Roman proper name.*  
 Servō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To preserve, keep, save.*  
 Servūs, i, *m.* *Slave.*  
 Sex. *Six.* See 175, 2.  
 Siciliā, ae, *f.* *Sicily.*  
 Silentiūm, ii, *n.* *Silence.*  
 Similis, ē. *Like.*  
 Singulāris, ē. *Remarkable, singular.*  
 Sōcēr, sōcēri, *m.* *Father-in-law.*  
 Sōciūs, ii, *m.* *Ally, associate.*  
 Sōcrātēs, is, *m.* *Socrates, the celebrated Athenian philosopher.*  
 Sōl, sōlis, *m.* *Sun.*

Sōlōn, Sōlōnis, *m.* *Solon, an Athenian legislator.*  
 Sōlūm, i, *n.* *Soil.*  
 Spartā, ae, *f.* *Sparta, capital of Laconia.*  
 Spēciēs, spēcīei, *f.* *Appearance.*  
 Spērō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To hope.*  
 Spēs, spēi, *f.* *Hope.*  
 Spōliō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To rob, spoil, despoil.*  
 Stimulō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To stimulate.*  
 Stultitiā, ae, *f.* *Folly.*  
 Suī, sibi. *Himself, herself, itself.*  
 See 184.  
 Sūm, essē, fuī. *To be.* See 204.  
 Sūpērō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To conquer.*  
 Supplicium, ii, *n.* *Punishment.*  
 Suūs, ā, ūm. *His, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*  
 Sŷracūsae, ārum, *f. plur.* *Syracuse, a city of Sicily.*

## T.

Tācēō, tācērē, tācuī, tācītūm. *To be silent.*  
 Tārentūm, i, *n.* *Tarentum, an Italian town.*  
 Tarquīniūs, ii, *m.* *Tarquin, a Roman king.*  
 Tēlūm, i, *n.* *Javelin, weapon.*  
 Tēmēritās, tēmēritātis, *f.* *Rashness.*  
 Templūm, i, *n.* *Temple.*  
 Tempūs, tempōris, *n.* *Time.*  
 Terrā, ae, *f.* *Land, earth.*  
 Terreō, terrērē, terrui, terrītūm. *To frighten, terrify.*  
 Tertius, ā, ūm. *Third.*  
 Thālēs, is, *m.* *Thales, a Grecian philosopher.*  
 Thēbānūs, ā, ūm. *Theban, belonging to Thebes (a city in Greece).*

Thēbānūs, ī, m. *A Theban.*

Thēmistōclēs, īs, m. *Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian.*

Thrāsýbúlus, ī, m. *Thrasybulus, the liberator of Athens.*

Ticínus, ī, m. *Ticinus, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.*

Trēs, triā. *Three.* See 176.

Trigintā. *Thirty.* See 175, 2.

Triumphō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To triumph.*

Trōjā, ae, f. *Troy, ancient city in Asia Minor.*

Tū, tuī. *Thou, you.* See 184.

Tullīā, ae, f. *Tullia, a Roman proper name.*

Tullūs, ī, m. *Tullus, a Roman king.*

Tūm, adv. *Then, at that time.*

Turrīs, turrīs, f. *Tower.*

Tuūs, ā, ūm. *Your, yours, thy, thine.*

Týrannūs, ī, m. *Tyrant.*

Týrius, ā, ūm. *Tyrian.*

### U.

Ulyssēs, īs, m. *Ulysses, a Grecian king.*

Uníversūs, ā, ūm. *All, the whole, entire.*

Unūs, ā, ūm. *One.* See 176.

Urbs, urbīs, f. *City.*

Usūs, ūs, m. *Use.*

Utīlis, ē. *Useful.*

### V.

Vālētūdō, vālētūdínīs, f. *Health.*

Vāriētās, vāriētātīs, f. *Variety.*

Vāriūs, ā, ūm. *Various.*

Varrō, varrōnīs, m. *Varro, a Roman consul.*

Vēr, vēris, n. *Spring.*

Verbūm, ī, n. *Word.*

Vērēcundiā, ae, f. *Modesty.*

Vērītās, vēritātīs, f. *Truth, verity.*

Vērūs, ā, ūm. *True, real.*

Vērūm, ī, n. *Truth.*

Vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm. *Your.*

Vestiō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To clothe.*

Viā, ae, f. *Way, road.*

Victōr, victōrīs, m. *Victor, conqueror.*

Victōriā, ae, f. *Victory.*

Victōriā, ae, f. *Victoria, Queen of England.*

Vigīlō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To watch, be awake.*

Villā, ē. *Cheap.*

Vindex, vindicīs, m. and f. *Vindicator, avenger.*

Viōlō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To violate.*

Vīr, vīrī, m. *Man, hero; soldier.*

Virgō, virgīnīs, f. *Maiden, girl.*

Virtūs, virtūtīs, f. *Valor, virtue.*

Vitā, ac, f. *Life.*

Vitiūm, ī, n. *Fault, vice.*

Vitūpērō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To find fault with, censure, blame.*

Vivō, vivērē, vixī, victūm. *To live, reside.*

Vocō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To call.*

Vōlō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To fly.*

Vōluntāriūs, ā, ūm. *Voluntary.*

Vōluptās, vōluptātīs, f. *Pleasure.*

Vox, vōcīs, f. *Voice.*

Vulnērō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. *To wound.*

Vulnūs, vulnērīs, n. *Wound.*

Vultūr, vultūrīs, m. *Vulture.*

Vultūs, ūs, m. *Countenance.*

### X.

Xerxēs, īs, m. *Xerxes, a Persian king.*

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

---

### A.

**A, an.** *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article. See p. 12, note 1.*

**Acceptable.** *Grātūs, ā, ūm.*

**Admonish.** *Admōneð, admōnērē, admōnū, admōnūtūm.*

**Adorned.** *Ornātūs, ā, ūm.*

**Advise.** *Mōneð, mōnērē, mōnū, mōnūtūm.*

**After.** *Post, prep. with acc.*

**Against.** *Contrā, prep. with acc. Sometimes denoted by the Dative.*

**Alexander.** *Alexandēr, Alexandrī, m.*

**All.** *Omnīs, ē.*

**Always.** *Sempēr, adv.*

**Announce.** *Nuntið, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

**Appoint.** *Creð, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

**Army.** *Exercītūs, ūs, m.*

**Arrival.** *Adventūs, ūs, m.*

**At.** *Denoted by the Ablative of Place, or of Time. See 421 and 426.*

**Athenian.** *Athēniensīs, ē.*

**Athenian, an Athenian.** *Athēniensīs, īs, m. and f.*

**Athens.** *Athēnae, ārūm, f. plur.*

**Attack.** *Impellūs, ūs, m.*

**Await.** *Expectð, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

### B.

**Battle.** *Proeliūm, ū, n.*

**Battle-array.** *Acies, eī, f.*

**Be.** *Sūm, esse, fui.*

**Be silent.** *Taceð, tacerē, taci, taci-tūm.*

**Beautiful.** *Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm.*

**Before.** *Antē, prep. with acc.*

**Bird.** *Avīs, āvīs, f.*

**Birth-day.** *Nātālis diēs, m.*

**Blame.** *Vitūpērð, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

**Book.** *Lībēr, librī, m.*

**Boy.** *Puēr, puērī, m.*

**Brave.** *Fortis, ē.*

**Bravely.** *Fortitēr, adv.*

**Bravery.** *Virtūs, virtūtis, f.*

**Bring to a close.** *Finið, irē, īvī, itūm.*

**Brother.** *Frāter, frātrīs, m.*

**Brutus.** *Brūtus, ī, m.*

**By.** *A, ab, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.*

### C.

**Caius.** *Caiūs, ū, m.*

**Call.** *Vocð, ārē, āvī, ātūm.*

**Camillus.** *Cāmillūs, ī, m.*

**Can, can have.** *See may, māy have.*

**Carthage.** *Carthāgð, Carthāgīnis, f.*

**Carthaginian.** *Carthāgīniensīs, ē.*

**Carthaginian, a Carthaginian.** *Carthāgīniensīs, īs, m. and f.*

**Cato.** *Cātð, Cātōnis, m.*

**Cicero.** *Cicērð, Cicērōnis, m.*

- Citizen. *Civis, civis, m. and f.*  
 City. *Urbs, urbis, f.*  
 Cloud. *Nubēs, nubis, f.*  
 Commander. *Impērator, impēratoris, m.*  
 Concerning. *Dē, prep. with abl.*  
 Consul. *Consul, consulis, m.*  
 Contrary to. *Contrā, prep. with acc.*  
 Conversation. *Sermō, sermonis, m.*  
 Corinth. *Cōrinthūs, i, f.*  
 Corinthian. *Cōrinthiūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Corinthian, a Corinthian. *Cōrinthiūs, i, m.*  
 Cornelius. *Cornēliūs, ū, m.*  
 Could, could have. See *might, might have.*  
 Country. *Pātriā, ae, f.*  
 Courage. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*  
 Crown. *Cōrōnā, ae, f.*
- D.*
- Daily. *Quotidiānus, ā, ūm.*  
 Daughter. *Filiā, ae, f.*  
 Day. *Diēs, diē, m.* See 119, note.  
 Dear. *Cārus, ā, ūm.*  
 Declare. *Indicō, indicere, indici, indictum.*  
 Delight. *Dēlectō, are, avi, atum.*  
 Desirous of. *Cupidūs, ā, ūm; avēdūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Did. *Often the sign of the Imperfect, or of the Perfect tense, especially in questions.*  
 Diligence. *Diligentiā, ae, f.*  
 Diligent. *Diligens, diligentis.*  
 Do. *Often the sign of the Present tense, especially in questions.*
- E.*
- Eight. *Octō.* See 175, 2.  
 Eighth. *Octāvus, ā, ūm.*  
 Enemy. *Hostis, hostis, m. and f.*
- Exercise. *Exercō, exercere, exercui, exercitum.*  
 Exile. *Exsul, exsulis, m. and f.*  
 Expect. *Expectō, are, avi, atum.*
- F.*
- Father. *Pater, patris, m.*  
 Father-in-law. *Socr, soceri, m.*  
 Fertile. *Fertilis, ē.*  
 Fidelity. *Fides, fidei, f.*  
 Field. *Agēr, agri, m.*  
 Fifth. *Quintus, ū, ūm.*  
 Fifty. *Quinquaginta.* See 175, 2.  
 Fight. *Pugnō, are, avi, atum.*  
 Finish. *Finis, ire, ivi, itum.*  
 Five. *Quinquē.* See 175, 2.  
 Flea. *Fugis, fugere, fugi, fugitum.*  
 Flower. *Flos, floris, m.*  
 Fly. *Volo, are, avi, atum.*  
 Foot. *Pēs, pedis, m.*  
 Fond of. *Amans, amantis.*  
 For. *Pro, prep. with abl.* In the sense of *because of*, it is denoted by the Ablative alone (414); and in the sense of *for the benefit of*, by the Dative (384).  
 Fortify. *Munis, ire, ivi, itum.*  
 Four. *Quattuor.* See 175, 2.  
 Fourth. *Quartus, ā, ūm.*  
 Friend. *Amicus, i, m.*  
 Friendship. *Amicitia, ae, f.*  
 From. *A, ab, prep. with abl.*  
 Fruit. *Fructus, ūs, m.*
- G.*
- Garden. *Hortus, i, m.*  
 Gaul. *Gallus, i, m.*  
 Gem. *Gemma, ae, f.*  
 General. *Dux, ducts, m. and f.*  
 Gift. *Donum, i, n.*  
 Glory. *Gloria, ae, f.*  
 Gold. *Aurum, i, n.*  
 Golden. *Aureus, ā, ūm.*



Good. *Bōnūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Goodness. *Bōnītās, bōnūtās, f.*  
 Govern. *Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectum.*  
 Great. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Greece. *Graeciā, ae, f.*  
 Grove. *Lūcūs, ī, m.*  
 Guard. *Custōdiō, irē, ivi, itum.*

*H.*

Had. *Often the sign of the Pluperfect tense.*  
 Hannibal. *Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, m.*  
 Happy. *Beātūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Have. *Hābēō, hābērē, hābuī, hābitum.*  
 Sometimes simply the sign of the Perfect tense; as, we have loved.  
 He, she, it. *Is, eā, id; illē, illā, illud.* The pronoun is often implied in the ending of the verb.  
 He himself. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum.*  
 Hear. *Audiō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 High. *Altūs, altā, altum.*  
 Himself. *Sui (184); ipsē, ipsā, ipsum.*  
 His. *Suūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Hope (verb). *Spērō, ārē, āvi, ātum.*  
 Hope (noun). *Spēs, spēi, f.*  
 Hour. *Hōrā, ae, f.*  
 Hundred. *Centum.* See 175, 2.

*I.*

I. *Egō, mei.* See 184.  
 In. *In,* prep. with abl.  
 In behalf of. *Prō,* prep. with abl.  
 Instruct. *Erūdiō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 Instructor. *Praeceptōr, praeceptōrīs, m.*  
 Into. *In,* prep. with acc.  
 Invite. *Invitō, ārē, āvi, ātum.*  
 Iron. *Ferrūm, ī, n.*  
 Island. *Insulā, ae, f.*  
 It. See *he, she, it.*  
 Italy. *Italiā, ae, f.*

*J.*

Judge. *Judex, iudicis, m. and f.*  
 Justice. *Iustitiā, ae, f.*

*K.*

Keep one's word. *Fidēm servārē.*  
 See p. 74, note 4.  
 Kindly. *Bēnignē, adv.*  
 King. *Rex, regis, m.*  
 Knowledge. *Scientiā, ae, f.*

*L.*

Large. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Latinus. *Lātīnūs, ī, m.*  
 Lavinia. *Lāvinīā, ae, f.*  
 Law. *Lex, legis, f.*  
 Lead. *Ducō, ducērē, duxī, ductum.*  
 Lead back. *Rēducō, rēducērē, rēduxī, rēductum.*  
 Lead forth. *Educō, educērē, eduxī, eductum.*  
 Let. *Render by the Subjunctive.* See 196, I., 2.  
 Leader. *Dux, dūcis, m. and f.*  
 Letter. *Epistolā, ae, f.*  
 Liberate. *Libērō, ārē, āvi, ātum.*  
 Life. *Vitā, ae, f.*  
 Like. *Similis, ē.*  
 Love. *Amō, ārē, āvi, ātum.*

*M.*

Macedonia. *Mācedōniā, ae, f.*  
 Man. *Hōmō, hōmīnis, m. Vir, viri, m.* The latter is used as a term of respect; a true or worthy man, a hero.  
 Many. *Multi, ae, ā, plur.*  
 May, can. *Signs of the Present Subjunctive.*  
 May have, can have. *Signs of the Perfect Subjunctive.*  
 Me. See *I.*  
 Memory. *Mēmōriā, ae, f.*

Might, could, would, should. *Signs of the Imperfect Subjunctive.*

Might have, could have, would have, should have. *Signs of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

Mind. *Animūs, i, m.*

Moat. *Fossā, ae, f.*

Money. *Pēcūniā, ae, f.*

Month. *Mensis, mensis, m.*

More. *Sign of the Comparative degree.* See 160.

Most. *Sign of the Superlative degree.* See 160.

Mound. *Aggēr, aggēris, m.*

Mountain. *Mons, montis, m.*

Much. *Multū, adv.*

My. *Meūs, ā, ūm.* See 185.

#### N.

Name. *Nōmēn, nōminis, n.*

Nightingale. *Luscīniā, ae, f.*

Noble. *Nōbilitās, ē.*

Not. *Nōn, adv.* Interrogative, *nonnē.*

#### O.

Obey. *Pārēō, pārērē, pārui, pārtūm.*

Observe. *Servō, arē, avi, atūm.*

Occupy. *Occūpō, arē, avi, atūm.*

Of. *Denoted by the Genitive.* See 393.

Of itself. *Pēr sē.*

On. *Often denoted by the Ablative of Time.* See 426.

One. *Unūs, ā, ūm.* See 176.

Oration. *Orātiō, orātiōnis, f.*

Orator. *Orātōr, orātōris, m.*

Our. *Nostēr, trā, trūm.*

#### P.

Parent. *Pārens, pārentis, m. and f.*

Philip. *Philippūs, i, m.*

Pisistratus. *Pisistrātūs, i, m.*

Plcase. *Plācēō, plācērē, plācui, plācītūm.*

Pleasing. *Grātūs, ā, ūm.*

Pleasure. *Vōluptās, vōluptātis, f.*

Plough. *Arō, arārē, arāvi, arātūm.*

Plunder (verb). *Spōliō, arē, avi, atūm.*

Practise. *Exerceō, exercērē, exercui, exercītūm.*

Praise (verb). *Laudō, arē, avi, atūm.*

Praise (noun). *Laus, laudis, f.*

Precept. *Praeceptū, i, n.*

Predict. *Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixi, praedictūm.*

Present (noun). *Dōnūm, i, n.*

Publius. *Publiūs, i, m.*

Punish. *Pūniō, irē, iwi, itūm.*

Pupil. *Discipulūs, i, m.*

Put to flight. *Fūgō, arē, avi, atūm.*

#### Q.

Queen. *Rēginā, ae, f.*

#### R.

Receive. *Accipio, accipērē, accēpi, acceptūm.*

Reign, royal authority. *Regnū, i, n.*

Renowned. *Clārūs, ā, ūm.*

Reside. *Habito, arē, avi, atūm.*

Rhine. *Rhēnūs, i, m.*

River. *Amnis, amnis, m.*

Roman. *Rōmānūs, ā, ūm.*

Roman, a Roman. *Rōmānis, i, m.*

Rome. *Rōma, ae, f.*

Romulus. *Rōmūlūs, i, m.*

Rule. *Rēgō, rēgērē, rexi, rectūm.*

#### S.

Safety. *Sālūs, sālūtis, f.*

Same. *Idēm, eadēm, idēm.* See 186.

Say. *Dicō, dicērē, dixi, dictūm.*

Save. *Servō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Scipio. *Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m.*  
 Senator. *Sēnātor, sēnātoris, m.*  
 Serve. *Serviō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 Servius. *Serviūs, ū, m.*  
 Setting. *Occāsūs, ūs, m.*  
 Shall, will. *Signs of the Future tense.*  
 Shall have, will have. *Signs of the Future Perfect tense.*  
 Shepherd. *Pastōr, pastōris, m.*  
 Should, should have. *See might, might have.*  
 Show. *Monstrō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Sicily. *Siciliā, ae, f.*  
 Silent. *See be silent.*  
 Silver. *Argentūm, i, n.*  
 Sing. *Cantō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Singing, a song. *Cantūs, ūs, m.*  
 Six. *Sex.* *See 175, 2.*  
 Slave. *Serviūs, i, m.*  
 Sleep. *Dormiō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 Soldier. *Milēs, militis, m.*  
 Somebody, some one. *Aliquis, aliquā, aliquid, or aliquod.* *See 191.*  
 Son. *Filiūs, ū, m.*  
 Son-in-law. *Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.*  
 Song. *Carmēn, carminis, n.*  
 Speak. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum.*  
 State. *Civitas, civitatis, f.*  
 Strengthen. *Firmō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Sun. *Sol, solis, m.*  
 Sunset. *Occāsūs solis.*  
 Sword. *Gladius, ū, m.*

T.

Take. *Capiō, capere, cepi, captum.*  
 Take by storm. *Expugnō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Tarquin. *Tarquinius, ū, m.*  
 Tell. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum.*  
 Temple. *Templum, i, n.*

Ten. *Dēcēm.* *See 175, 2.*  
 Terrify. *Terreō, terrere, terrui, territum.*  
 Than. *Quā.* Often omitted, in which case the Ablative follows. *See 417.*  
 That. *Illē, illā, illud.* *See 186.*  
 The. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* *See p. 12, note 1.*  
 Their. *Suūs, ū, ūm.*  
 Then. *Tūm, adv.*  
 Thing. *Rēs, rei, f.*  
 This. *Hic, haec, hoc.* *See 186.*  
 Three. *Trēs, triā.* *See 176.*  
 Time. *Tempūs, temporis, n.*  
 To. *Ad, in,* preps. with acc. *To* is sometimes denoted by the Accusative, and sometimes by the Dative. *See 379 and 384.*  
 True. *Vērūs, ū, ūm.*  
 Truth. *Verūm, i, n.*  
 Tullia. *Tullia, ae, f.*  
 Two. *Duō, duae, duō.* *See 176.*  
 Tyrant. *Tyrannūs, i, m.*

U.

Use. *Usus, ūs, m.*  
 Useful. *Utilis, ē.*

V.

Valor. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*  
 Valuable. *Prētiōsūs, ū, ūm.*  
 Very. *Sometimes the sign of the Superlative.* *See 160.*  
 Victoria. *Victoriā, ae, f.*  
 Victory. *Victoriā, ae, f.*  
 Violate. *Viōlō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Virtue. *Virtūs, virtutis, f.*

W.

Walk. *Ambulō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 War. *Bellum, i, n.*

Way. *Via*, ae, f.

Well. *Bene*, adv.

Who, which (relative). *Qui*, quae, quod. See 187.

Who, which, what (interrogative)?

*Quis*, quae, quid? *qui*, quae, quod?

See 188.

Wide. *Latus*, ō, ūm.

Wife. *Conjux*, conjugis, f.

Will, will have. See *shall*, *shall have*.

Winter. *Hiems*, hiemis, f.

Wisdom. *Sapientia*, ae, f.

Wise. *Sapiens*, sapientis.

With. *Cum*, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.

Word. *Verbum*, i, n. To keep one's word, *fidem servare*. See p. 74, note 4.

Would, would have. See *might*, *might have*.

Wound. *Vulnĕr*, ō, ūm.

Write. *Scribĕ*, scribere, scripsi, scriptum.

# Y.

Year. *Annus*, i, m.

You. *Tu*, tui. See 184.

Your. *Tuus*, ō, ūm; *vester*, vestrum.

Yourself. *Tu*, tui *ipse*.

## Arnold's First Latin Book ;

Remodelled and Rewritten, and adapted to the Ollendorff Method of Instruction. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M. 12mo, 302 pages.

Under the labors of the present author, the work of Arnold has undergone radical changes. It has been adapted to the Ollendorff improved method of instruction, and is superior to the former work in its plan and all the details of instruction. While it proceeds in common with Arnold on the principle of imitation and repetition, it pursues much more exactly and with a surer step the progressive method, and aims to make the pupil master of every individual subject before he proceeds to a new one, and of each subject by itself before it is combined with others ; so that he is brought gradually and surely to understand the most difficult combinations of the language. An important feature of this book is, that it carries along the Syntax *pari passu* with the Etymology, so that the student is not only all the while becoming familiar with the forms of the language, but is also learning to construct sentences and to understand the mutual relations of their component parts.

Special care has been taken in the exercises to present such idioms and expressions alone as are authorized by the best classic authors, so that the learner may acquire, by example as well as precept, a distinct idea of pure Latinity.

It has been a leading object with the author so to classify and arrange the various topics as to simplify the subject, and, as far as possible, to remove the disheartening difficulties too often encountered at the outset in the study of an ancient language.

*From W. E. TOLMAN, Instructor in Providence High School.*

"I have used Arnold's First Latin Book, remodelled and rewritten by Mr. Harkness, in my classes during the past year, and find it to be a work not so much remodelled and rewritten as one *entirely new*, both in its plan and in its adaptation to the wants of the beginner in Latin."

*From Wm. RUSSELL, Editor of the First Series of the Boston Journal of Education.*

"The form which this work has taken under the skilful hand of Mr. H. is marked throughout by a method purely elementary, perfectly simple, gradually progressive, and rigorously exact. Pupils trained on such a manual cannot fail of becoming distinguished, in their subsequent progress, for precision and correctness of knowledge, and for rapid advancement in genuine scholarship."

*From GEORGE CAPRON, Principal of Worcester High School.*

"I have examined the work with care, and am happy to say that I find it superior to any similar work with which I am acquainted. I shall recommend it to my next class."

*From J. R. BOHR, Professor of Ancient Languages in Michigan University.*

"I have examined your First Book in Latin, and am exceedingly pleased both with the plan and execution. I shall not fail to use my influence toward introducing it into the classical schools of this State."

## Second Latin Book ;

Comprising an Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a Complete Analytical Syntax, in a series of Lessons and Exercises, involving the Construction, Analysis, and Reconstruction of Latin Sentences. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M., Senior Master in the Providence High School. 12mo, 362 pages.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear, and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons, which the student is required to translate, analyze, and reconstruct. He is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson, both by analysis and synthesis.

The careful study of this volume, on the plan recommended by the author, will greatly facilitate the pupil's progress in the higher departments of the language. Such is the testimony of the numerous institutions in which Harkness's improved edition of Arnold has been introduced.

*From J. A. SPENCER, D.D., late Professor of Latin in Burlington College, N. J.*

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, &c., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

*From PROF. GAMMELL, of Brown University.*

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

*From PROF. LINCOLN, of Brown University.*

"It seems to me to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skillfully formed exercises with systematic instruction."

*From J. J. OWEN, D.D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.*

"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the author's learning and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Lewisburg University, Pennsylvania.*

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

## A Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges

By A. HARKNESS, PH.D., Professor in Brown University.

To explain the general plan of the work, the Publishers ask the attention of teachers to the following extracts from the Preface :

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the **great facts** and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully-selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself.

6. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

7. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive.

## Harkness's Latin Grammar.

*From Rev. Prof. J. J. OWEN, D.D., New York Free Academy.*

"I have carefully examined Harkness's Latin Grammar, and am so well pleased with its plan, arrangement, and execution, that I shall take the earliest opportunity of introducing it as a text-book in the Free Academy."

*From Mr. JOHN D. PHILBRICK, Superintendent of Public Schools, Boston, Mass.*

"This work is evidently no hasty performance, nor the compilation of a mere book maker, but the well-ripened fruit of mature and accurate scholarship. It is eminently practical, because it is truly philosophical."

*From Mr. G. N. BIGELOW, Principal of State Normal School, Framingham, Mass.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar is the most satisfactory text-book I have ever used."

*From Rev. DANIEL LEACH, Superintendent Public Schools, Providence, R. I.*

"I am quite confident that it is superior to any Latin Grammar before the public. It has recently been introduced into the High School, and all are much pleased with it."

*From Dr. J. B. CHAPIN, State Commissioner of Public Instruction in Rhode Island.*

"The vital principles of the language are clearly and beautifully exhibited. The work needs no one's commendation."

*From Mr. ABNER J. PHIPPS, Superintendent of Public Schools, Lowell, Mass.*

"The aim of the author seems to be fully realized in making this 'a useful Book, and as such I can cheerfully commend it. The clear and admirable manner in which the intricacies of the Subjunctive Mood are unfolded, is one of its marked features."

"The evidence of ripe scholarship and of familiarity with the latest works of German and English philologists is manifest throughout the book."

*From Dr. J. T. CHAMPLIN, President of Waterville College.*

"I like both the plan and the execution of the work very much. Its matter and manner are both admirable. I shall be greatly disappointed if it does not at once win the public favor."

*From Prof. A. S. PACKARD, Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar exhibits throughout the results of thorough scholarship. I shall recommend it in our next catalogue."

*From Prof. J. J. STANTON, Bates College.*

"We have introduced Harkness's Grammar into this Institution. It is much more logical and concise than any of its rivals."

*From Mr. WM. J. ROLFE, Principal Cambridge High School.*

"Notwithstanding all the inconveniences that must attend a change of Latin Grammars in a large school like mine, I shall endeavor to secure the adoption of Harkness's Grammar in place of our present text-book as soon as possible."

*From Mr. L. R. WILLISTON, Principal Ladies' Seminary, Cambridge, Mass.*

"I think this work a decided advance upon the Grammar now in use."

*From Mr. D. B. HAGER, Princ. Elliot High School, Jamaica Plain, Mass.*

"This is, in my opinion, by far the best Latin Grammar ever published. It is admirably adapted to the use of learners, being remarkably concise, clear, comprehensive and philosophical. It will henceforth be used as a text-book in this school."



## Harkness's Latin Grammar.

*From Prof. C. S. HARRINGTON and Prof. J. C. VAN BENSCHOTEN, of the Wesleyan University.*

"This work is clear, accurate, and happy in its statement of principles, is simple yet scholarly, and embraces the latest researches in this department of philological science. It will appear in our catalogue."

*From Mr. ELBRIDGE SMITH, Principal Free Academy, Norwich, Ct.*

"This is not only the best Latin Grammar, but one of the most thoroughly prepared school-books that I have ever seen. I have introduced the book into the Free Academy, and am much pleased with the results of a month's experience in the class-room."

*From Mr. H. A. PRATT, Principal High School, Hartford, Ct.*

"I can heartily recommend Harkness's new work to both teachers and scholars. It is, in my judgment, the best Latin Grammar ever offered to our schools."

*From Mr. I. F. CADY, Principal High School, Warren, R. I.*

"The longer I use Harkness's Grammar the more fully am I convinced of its superior excellence. Its merits must secure its adoption wherever it becomes known."

*From Messrs. S. THURBER and T. B. STOCKWELL, Public High School, Providence.*

"An experience of several weeks with Harkness's Latin Grammar, enables us to say with confidence, that it is an improvement on our former text-book."

*From Mr. C. B. GOFF, Principal Boys' Classical High School, Providence, R. I.*

"The practical working of Harkness's Grammar is gratifying even beyond my expectations."

*From Rev. Prof. M. H. BUCKHAM, University of Vermont.*

"Harkness's Latin Grammar seems to me to supply the desideratum. It is philosophical in its method, and yet simple and clear in its statements; and this, in my judgment, is the highest encomium which can be bestowed on a text-book."

*From Mr. E. T. QUIMBY, Appleton Academy, New Ipswich, N. H.*

"I think the book much superior to any other I have seen. I should be glad to introduce it at once."

*From Mr. H. OROUTT, Glenwood Ladies' Seminary, W. Brattleboro', Vt.*

"I am pleased with Harkness's Latin Grammar, and have already introduced it into this seminary."

*From Mr. CHARLES JEWETT, Principal of Franklin Academy.*

"I deem it an admirable work, and think it will supersede all others now in use. In the division and arrangement of topics, and in its mechanical execution, it is superior to any Latin Grammar extant."

*From Mr. C. C. CHASE, Principal of Lowell High School.*

"Prof. Harkness's Grammar is, in my opinion, admirably adapted to make the study of the Latin language agreeable and interesting."

*From Mr. J. KIMBALL, High School, Dorchester, Mass.*

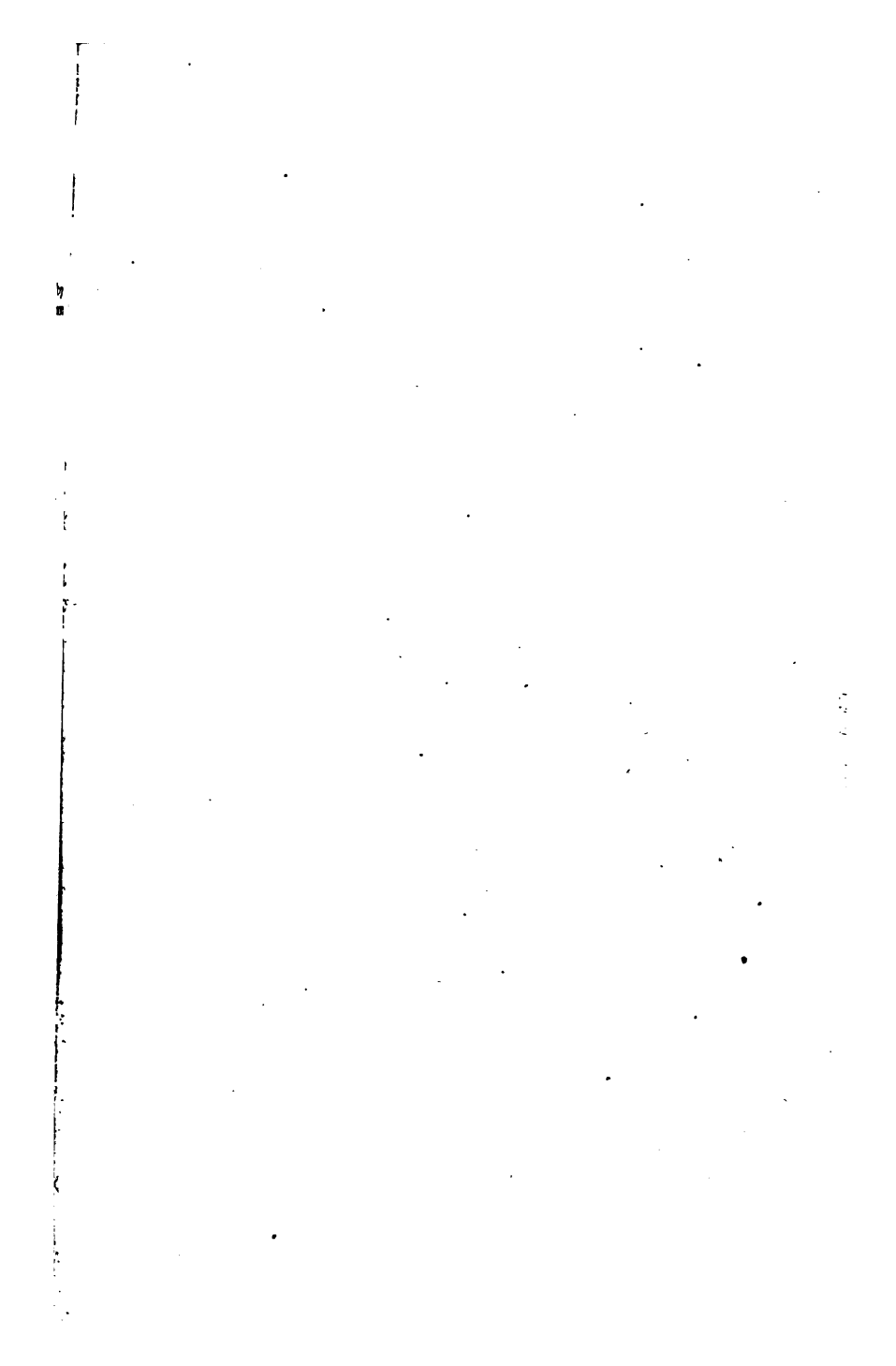
"It meets my ideal of what is desirable in every grammar, to wit: compression of general principles in terse definitions and statements, for ready use; and fulness of detail, well arranged for reference."

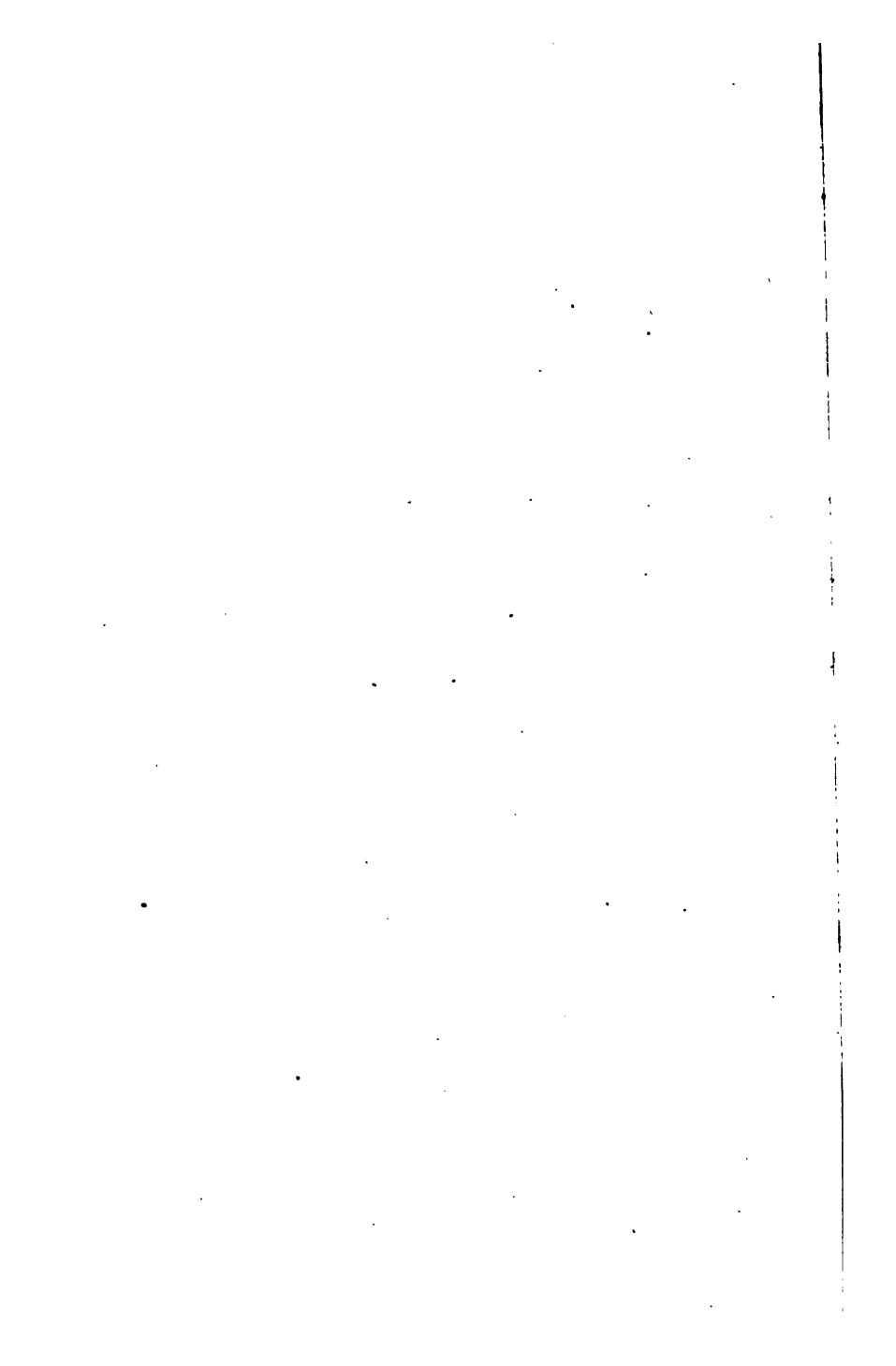
## **HARKNESS'S LATIN GRAMMAR.**

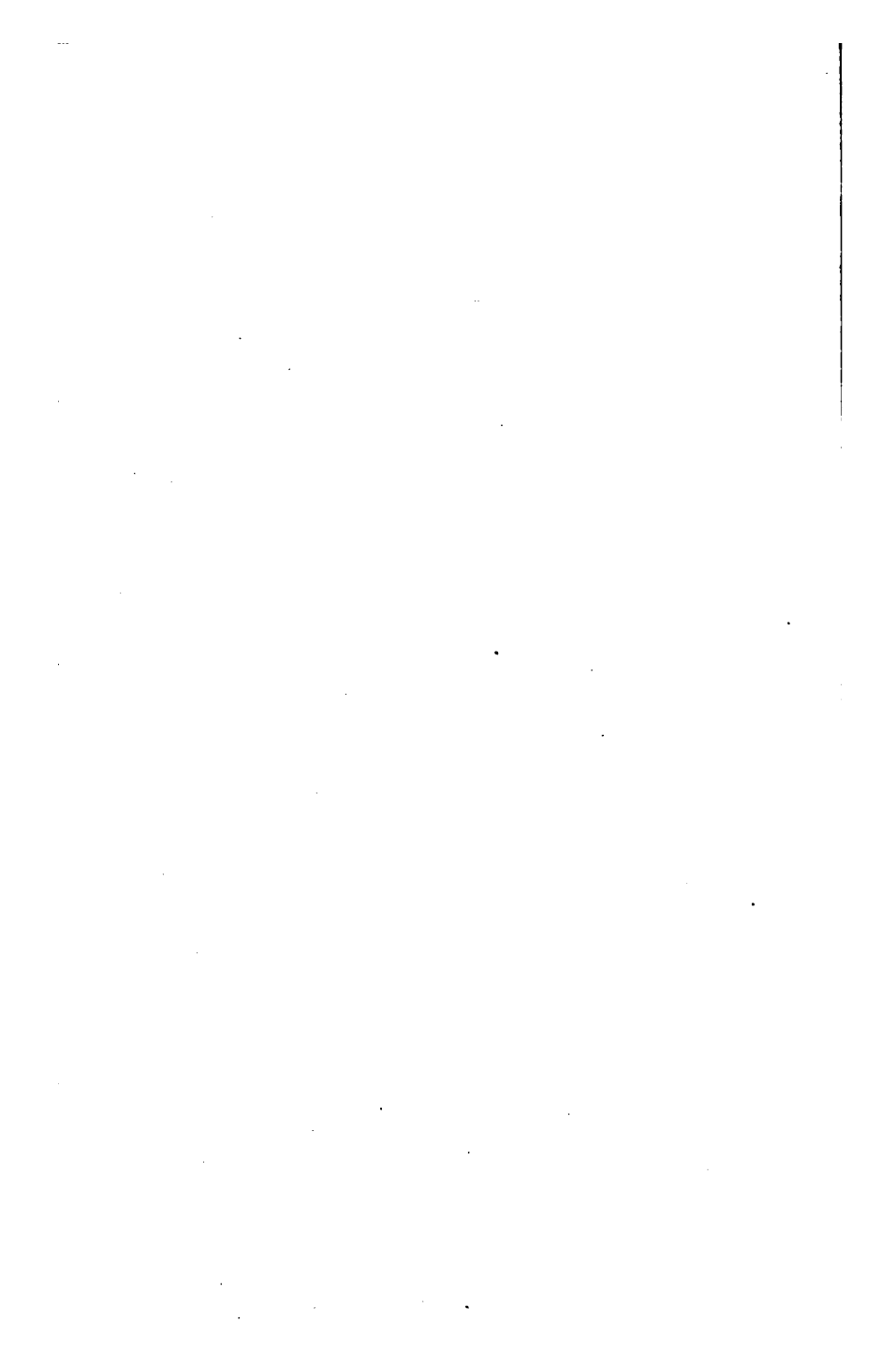
12mo, 355 pages.

Although this work has been published only a few weeks, it is recommended by and introduced into a large number of Colleges and Classical Schools, among which are the following:

BOWDOIN COLLEGE, Brunswick, Me.  
BATES' COLLEGE, Lewiston, Maine.  
LEWISTON FALLS ACADEMY, Auburn, Me.  
DOVER HIGH SCHOOL, Dover, N. H.  
DARTMOUTH COLLEGE.  
NORWICH UNIVERSITY, Norwich, Vt.  
GLENWOOD LADIES' SEMINARY, Brattleboro, Vt.  
AMHERST COLLEGE, Amherst, Mass.  
TUFTS COLLEGE, Medford, Mass.  
PHILLIPS' ACADEMY, Andover, Mass.  
STATE NORMAL SCHOOL, Framingham, Mass.  
HIGHLAND SCHOOL, Worcester, Mass.  
NEWTON HIGH SCHOOL, Newton, Mass.  
PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL, Springfield, Mass.  
ROXBURY LATIN SCHOOL, Roxbury, Mass.  
LAWRENCE ACADEMY, Groton, Mass.  
AUBURNDALE FEMALE SEMINARY, Auburndale, Mass.  
SPENCER ACADEMY, Spencer, Mass.  
JAMAICA PLAIN HIGH SCHOOL, Jamaica Plain, Mass.  
BROWN UNIVERSITY, Providence, R. I.  
UNIVERSITY GRAMMAR SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.  
PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.  
FRIENDS' BOARDING SCHOOL, Providence, R. I.  
WARREN HIGH SCHOOL, Warren, R. I.  
PROVIDENCE CONFERENCE SEMINARY, East Greenwich, R. I.  
WESLEYAN UNIVERSITY, Middletown, Ct.  
FREE ACADEMY, Norwich, Ct.  
NEW LONDON ACADEMY, New London, Ct.  
YALE COLLEGE, New Haven, Ct.  
ROCHESTER UNIVERSITY, Rochester, N. Y.  
MADISON UNIVERSITY, Hamilton, N. Y.  
NEW YORK FREE ACADEMY, New York.  
CORTLAND ACADEMY, Homer, N. Y.  
OSWEGO HIGH SCHOOL, Oswego, N. Y.  
HAMILTON COLLEGE, Clinton, N. Y.  
ROBERTS' FREE COLLEGE, Geneva, N. Y.  
CANANDAIGUA ACADEMY, Canandaigua, N. Y.  
NEWTON HIGH SCHOOL, Newton, N. J.  
HAVERFORD COLLEGE, West Haverford, Pa.  
CLASSICAL AND MILITARY SCHOOL, Columbia, Pa.  
SHUTTLEFF COLLEGE, Upper Alton, Ill.  
IOWA STATE UNIVERSITY, Iowa City, Iowa.  
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, Ann Arbor, Michigan.







Standard Classical Works.

**Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose**

Composition.\* 12mo. 297 pages.

**Arnold's Second Part to the above.\*** 12mo. 248 pages.

**Arnold's Greek Reading Book.** Containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, Copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

Dr. Arnold's Greek Courses have been carefully revised, corrected, and improved by J. A. SPENCER, D.D., making them a thorough, practical, and easy Greek course.

**Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition.**

Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES B. BOISE, Professor of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

**Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek**

Grammar. By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 208 pages.

**First Lessons in Greek;\*** or, the Beginner's Companion-

Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.

**Hadley's Greek Grammar,\*** for Schools and Colleges. By

JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 866 pages.

**Herodotus, Selections from;** Comprising mainly such por-

tions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON D. D., Professor of Philosophy and English Literature in Dickinson College. 12mo. 185 pages.

**Homer's Iliad,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by

JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL.D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 740 pages.

**Homer's Odyssey,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by

JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.

**Kuhner's Greek Grammar.** Translated by Professors

EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.

**Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.\*** Being a Progressive Ex-

hibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Professor of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 871 pages.

**Owen's Greek Reader:** Containing selections from various

authors. Adapted to Sophocles' and Kuhner's Grammars. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN. New and Revised Edition. With Map. 12mo.

Standard Classical Works.

**Plato's Apology and Crito.\*** With Notes by W. S. TYLER,  
Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 190 pages.  
**Thucydides** *History of the Peloponnesian War*,  
accompanied by a translation of the War,

acc  
Owe  
**Xenop**  
and  
in M  
**Xenop**  
of Se  
in th  
**Xenop**  
Dini  
Map  
**Xenop**  
with  
**Sopho**  
Sche  
in th

HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



THE ESSEX INSTITUTE  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION

GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
OF NEW YORK

JANUARY 25, 1924

PUBLISHED

2

Included

A slight copy of the book will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any Teacher remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, postage prepaid, upon receipt of full retail price.